

## **Oracle® Applications**

Upgrading Oracle Applications

Release 11*i* (11.5.9)

**Part No. B10639-01**

June 2003

Oracle Applications, Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11i (11.5.9)

Part No. B10639-01

Copyright © 2000, 2003 Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.

Primary Authors: Carole Eubanks

Contributors: Janet Buckbinder, Steve Carter, Gail D'Aloisio, Steve Damiani, Taite Darlington, Michael Fiore, Matthew Lobaugh, Elizabeth Looney, Julia Margetson, Kent Noble, Kristin Penaskovic, Louise Raffo, Christina Ravaglia, Susan Saperstein, Yun Shaw, Mildred Wang

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information of Oracle Corporation; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly or decompilation of the Programs, except to the extent required to obtain interoperability with other independently created software or as specified by law, is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. Oracle Corporation does not warrant that this document is error-free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Oracle Corporation.

If the Programs are delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing or using the programs on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

**Restricted Rights Notice** Programs delivered subject to the DOD FAR Supplement are "commercial computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs, including documentation, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement. Otherwise, Programs delivered subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulations are "restricted computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs shall be subject to the restrictions in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June, 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee's responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and Oracle Corporation disclaims liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

The Programs may provide links to Web sites and access to content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle is not responsible for the availability of, or any content provided on, third-party Web sites. You bear all risks associated with the use of such content. If you choose to purchase any products or services from a third party, the relationship is directly between you and the third party. Oracle is not responsible for: (a) the quality of third-party products or services; or (b) fulfilling any of the terms of the agreement with the third party, including delivery of products or services and warranty obligations related to purchased products or services. Oracle is not responsible for any loss or damage of any sort that you may incur from dealing with any third party.

Oracle is a registered trademark, and ConText, EMM Advantage, JInitiator, Oracle Discoverer, Oracle*MetaLink*, Oracle Store, Oracle8, Oracle8i, Oracle9i, Oracle9iAS Discoverer, PL/SQL, SQL\*Net, and SQL\*Plus are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

---

---

# Contents

<b>Send Us Your Comments</b> .....	xi
<b>Preface</b> .....	xiii
Audience .....	xiv
How to Use This Guide.....	xiv
Overview of an Upgrade .....	xvi
Release 11i System Requirements .....	xvii
Scheduling Time for the Upgrade .....	xx
Long-running processes.....	xxii
Important Upgrade Considerations.....	xxiv
Languages and Character Sets .....	xxvii
Forms and Reports.....	xxviii
Customized Environments.....	xxviii
Application-specific Information .....	xxx
<b>1 Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software</b>	
<b>Database</b> .....	1-2
Database Upgrade Tasks .....	1-2
<b>Applications Technology</b> .....	1-5
System Administration Tasks.....	1-6
Application Object Library Tasks.....	1-7
Oracle Alert Tasks .....	1-7
Oracle Workflow Tasks .....	1-8
<b>Financials</b> .....	1-9

Oracle Cash Management Tasks .....	1-9
Oracle Payables Tasks .....	1-9
Oracle Receivables Tasks .....	1-10
Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks .....	1-12
<b>Projects</b> .....	1-14
Oracle Projects Tasks .....	1-14
<b>Human Resources</b> .....	1-16
Oracle Human Resources Tasks .....	1-16
Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks .....	1-19
<b>Manufacturing</b> .....	1-20
Oracle Work in Process Tasks .....	1-21
<b>Public Sector/University</b> .....	1-21
Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks .....	1-22
<b>Sales and Marketing</b> .....	1-22
Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks .....	1-22
<b>Service</b> .....	1-22
Oracle Service Tasks .....	1-22

## 2 Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

<b>Environment</b> .....	2-2
Environment Preparation Tasks .....	2-2
<b>Database</b> .....	2-4
Database Upgrade Tasks .....	2-4
<b>Applications Technology Products</b> .....	2-7
System Administration Tasks .....	2-8
Oracle FlexBuilder/ Account Generator Tasks .....	2-9
<b>Financials</b> .....	2-10
Oracle General Ledger Tasks .....	2-10
Global Accounting Engine Tasks .....	2-13
Oracle Payables Tasks .....	2-17
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks .....	2-21
Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks .....	2-28
Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks .....	2-29
<b>Projects</b> .....	2-30
Oracle Projects Tasks .....	2-30

<b>Order Management</b> .....	2-41
Oracle Inventory Tasks .....	2-41
Oracle Order Management Tasks .....	2-42
<b>Procurement</b> .....	2-50
Oracle Purchasing Tasks.....	2-50
<b>Public Sector</b> .....	2-52
Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks .....	2-52

### 3 **Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade**

<b>Applications Technology</b> .....	3-2
Oracle Alert Tasks .....	3-2
Oracle Common Modules Tasks .....	3-3
Oracle Workflow Tasks .....	3-4
<b>Financials</b> .....	3-5
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	3-5
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	3-9
Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks .....	3-12
<b>Projects</b> .....	3-13
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	3-13
<b>Manufacturing</b> .....	3-17
Oracle Cost Management Tasks .....	3-17
<b>Order Management</b> .....	3-19
Oracle Inventory Tasks .....	3-19
Oracle Order Management Tasks .....	3-21
<b>Procurement</b> .....	3-22
Oracle Purchasing Tasks.....	3-22
<b>Public Sector</b> .....	3-23
Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks.....	3-23
Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks .....	3-25
<b>Sales and Marketing</b> .....	3-26
Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks.....	3-26
<b>Service</b> .....	3-26
Oracle Service Tasks.....	3-26
<b>Database and System Administration</b> .....	3-27
System Administration Tasks.....	3-27

Database Upgrade Tasks .....	3-28
Run AutoUpgrade.....	3-39

## 4 Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

Updates .....	4-2
Update and Patching Tasks.....	4-2
Environment .....	4-5
Environment Preparation Tasks.....	4-5
Database.....	4-6
Database Upgrade Tasks .....	4-6
Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC).....	4-10
Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks.....	4-10
Applications Technology.....	4-12
System Administration Tasks.....	4-12
Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks.....	4-21
Financials.....	4-23
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks.....	4-23
Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks .....	4-24
Public Sector .....	4-25
Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks.....	4-25
Environment .....	4-26
Environment Verification Tasks.....	4-26

## 5 Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

All Products.....	5-2
Implementation and Setup Tasks.....	5-2
Financials.....	5-2
Oracle General Ledger Tasks .....	5-3
Global Accounting Engine Tasks .....	5-5
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	5-6
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	5-9
Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks .....	5-18
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks.....	5-19
Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks.....	5-20
Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks .....	5-20

<b>Projects</b> .....	5-28
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	5-29
<b>Human Resources</b> .....	5-40
Oracle Time and Labor Tasks.....	5-41
Oracle Payroll Tasks.....	5-41
<b>Manufacturing</b> .....	5-43
Oracle Cost Management Tasks.....	5-43
Oracle MRP/Supply Chain Planning Tasks.....	5-45
<b>Order Management</b> .....	5-46
Oracle Inventory Tasks.....	5-46
Oracle Order Management Tasks.....	5-47
<b>Procurement</b> .....	5-52
Oracle Purchasing Tasks.....	5-53
<b>Public Sector</b> .....	5-60
Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks.....	5-60
Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks.....	5-62
<b>Sales and Marketing</b> .....	5-62
Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks.....	5-62
<b>Service</b> .....	5-62
Oracle Service Tasks.....	5-63

## 6 Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

<b>All Products</b> .....	6-2
Implementation and Setup Tasks.....	6-2
<b>Applications Technology</b> .....	6-2
System Administration Tasks.....	6-3
Application Object Library Tasks.....	6-3
Oracle Alert Tasks.....	6-7
<b>Financial</b> .....	6-8
Oracle Cash Management Tasks.....	6-8
Oracle General Ledger Tasks.....	6-8
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	6-15
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	6-19
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks.....	6-21
Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks.....	6-26

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks.....	6-29
Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks .....	6-33
<b>Projects</b> .....	6-34
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	6-35
<b>Human Resources</b> .....	6-35
Oracle Human Resources Tasks .....	6-36
Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks .....	6-38
<b>Order Management</b> .....	6-38
Oracle Inventory Tasks .....	6-39
<b>Public Sector</b> .....	6-41
Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks .....	6-41

## 7 Finishing Your Upgrade

<b>System Maintenance Tasks</b> .....	7-1
<b>Required Finishing Tasks</b> .....	7-6
Implement New Product and Country-specific Functionality .....	7-6
Resize the Database .....	7-7
Change Passwords.....	7-7
Maintain Snapshot Information.....	7-7
Back Up Oracle Applications .....	7-8
<b>Logging On to Oracle Applications</b> .....	7-8
<b>Tasks Specific To Your Installation</b> .....	7-9
Register Newly Licensed Products .....	7-9
Configure the Oracle Workflow Java-based Notification Mailer .....	7-9
Set Up and Implement Oracle Discoverer End User Layer (EUL) .....	7-9
Set Up and Implement Oracle Embedded Data Warehouse (EDW).....	7-10
Convert Custom Message Dictionary Functions .....	7-11
Convert Database to Multiple Organizations (Multi-Org) .....	7-11
Convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC) .....	7-11
Understand System Administration Tasks .....	7-12
Understand Oracle Applications Maintenance Tasks.....	7-12

## A Getting Help

<b>Documentation Accessibility</b> .....	A-1
<b>Related Documentation</b> .....	A-2

Training and Support..... A-3  
EMM Advantage ..... A-4

**Index**



---

---

# Send Us Your Comments

**Oracle Applications, Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11i (11.5.9)**

**Part No. B10639-01**

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the document title and part number, and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us at the following email address: [apps\\_relgrp\\_us@oracle.com](mailto:apps_relgrp_us@oracle.com).

If you have problems with the software, contact Oracle Support Services.



---

---

# Preface

This book describes the steps necessary for preparing Applications products for an upgrade to Release 11*i* (11.5.9) and for performing post-upgrade steps after you run AutoUpgrade. It is intended for users who are upgrading from Release 10.7 (NCA and SmartClient) or Release 11.0.

---

---

**Attention:** If you have already upgraded to an earlier version of Release 11*i*, follow the upgrade steps in the *Oracle Applications Release 11.5.9 Maintenance Pack Installation Instructions*. This document is available on *OracleMetaLink* (Doc ID: 232834.1)

---

---

This preface contains important overview information that you should read and be familiar with before you begin the upgrade.

- If you are using Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character-mode) or Release 11.0 of Oracle Applications, you may upgrade directly to Release 11*i*. *You cannot upgrade to Release 11i directly from releases prior to 10.7.*
- Documentation associated with this release was current as of the time it was published. However, *OracleMetaLink* may contain more up-to-date information. *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes*, *Oracle Applications Release Notes*, and *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* are required reading before you upgrade. They are available *only* on *OracleMetaLink*.
- Product-specific implementation manuals have information about implementing new products that is not included in this manual. Consult these references before you begin the upgrade. They are available on the *Oracle Applications Documentation CD*.

- The instructions in this book apply to upgrades from character-mode Release 10.7 installations. However, most navigation paths are based on GUI versions. The *Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes* reference manual contains character-mode equivalents of GUI menu paths.

---



---

**Note:** Release 10.7 NCA and Release 10 SmartClient (10SC) Production 16.1 are interchangeable at the database level.

---



---

## Audience

This manual is written for those people responsible for upgrading Oracle Applications. In it, we assign those upgrade steps to the following roles. Note that the role names and descriptions correspond to the ones included in the Oracle upgrade methodology used by EMM Advantage. (See Appendix B for more information.)

Upgrade Role	Description
Application Specialist	Provides knowledge and guidance regarding application functionality.
Database Administrator	Installs and configures the Oracle database and maintains database access controls.
System Administrator	Responsible for administering systems.
Technical Specialist	Responsible for designing, developing, unit testing, implementing, and maintaining the custom extensions for the Oracle Applications.
IS Manager	Directs the client information systems organization within a business.

## How to Use This Guide

This book is organized by upgrade *category*. There are three types of steps: pre-upgrade, post-grade, and finishing. Categories 1, 2, and 3 are *pre-upgrade* steps, which you perform *before* you run AutoUpgrade. Categories 4, 5, and 6 are *post-upgrade* steps, which you perform *after* you have run AutoUpgrade. You must complete all steps that apply to your installation before you begin the next category.

After all Category 4, 5, and 6 steps have been completed, and after you have verified that the entire upgrade was successful, you must perform *finishing* steps to complete the upgrade. Some finishing steps are required, and some are optional.

## Step Conditions

This manual classifies steps based on certain conditions that may apply.

If the step is marked...	Then, it...
Required	is necessary for a successful upgrade.
Conditionally required	applies only under certain conditions. If the condition does not apply, you do not have to perform the step.
Recommended	may be in your best interest to perform this step. For example, the step may reduce the time it takes to perform the upgrade.

## Step Summary Lines

Below each numbered step heading are summary lines that indicate specific information about the step. For example:

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables)</b> <b>/Application Specialist (Receivables)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>AX_ENSURE_TRANS_ARE_TRANS</b>	

In addition, the step summary lines *may* contain other information such as:

Perform for this country: **Brazil**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Perform for each product group: **Yes**

Perform the steps *only* for the release level that corresponds to your installation.

## Text Conventions

We recommend that you review the following conventions used in this manual.

Convention	Meaning
<b>UNIX:</b> <b>Windows:</b>	Indicates platform-specific information. This guide contains information for both UNIX and Windows platforms. Instructions for UNIX platforms also apply to Linux platforms, unless otherwise noted.

Convention	Meaning
\$ or C:\>	Represents the platform-specific command prompt. The prompt may differ.
Monospace text	Represents command line text. Type this text exactly as shown.
< >	Text enclosed in angle brackets represents a variable. Substitute a value for the variable text. Do not type the brackets.
[ ]	Encloses optional items or indicate a function key. Do not type the brackets.
	Represents an <i>or</i> option among several options. You must enter only one of the options. Do not type the vertical bar.
\	In examples of commands you type online, a backslash at the end of a line signifies that you must type the entire command on one line. <i>Do not type the backslash.</i>
Special Notes	Alert you about certain special conditions that apply to individual steps. They include Additional Information, Note, Attention, and Warning.

## Overview of an Upgrade

Upgrading employs several utilities designed to streamline the process. Rapid Install installs the most up-to-date, certified version of Oracle Applications, along with the required technology stack components. In an upgrade, it creates the new file systems for the application (middle) tier components and the new file system for the database, if it is on a platform that supports Oracle Applications on the application tier. For complete information, refer to *Installing Oracle Applications*.

AutoUpgrade updates products from an earlier release of Oracle Applications to a new one. With AutoPatch, you apply various updates and patches when directed to do so. For complete information, refer to *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*. See also *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

### Upgrade Tasks

In general, perform the following tasks to complete an upgrade:

- Read the documentation associated with this release (see Related Documentation in Appendix A: Getting Help). All documentation is available either on the *Oracle Applications Documentation Library* CD, from OracleMetaLink, or from the OracleStore.

- Download and run The Upgrade Manual Script from *OracleMetaLink* to generate a list of steps that you can omit from the upgrade process. Then, review the remaining steps to determine the most efficient way to perform the upgrade for your installation.
- Complete the Category 1 steps listed in this manual.
- Begin performing the Category 2 steps. When instructed to do so, run Rapid Install to create the new file systems for the application tier components and the new ORACLE\_HOME for the database. See *Upgrading Your System in Installing Oracle Applications* for information about running Rapid Install.
- Use AutoPatch to apply the family consolidated upgrade patches, as directed in the latest *Oracle Applications Release Notes* and complete the remaining Category 2 steps.
- Complete the Category 3 steps, including running AutoUpgrade. Refer to *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* for more information about AutoUpgrade.
- Begin the Category 4 steps. When instructed to do so, apply all patches and updates.
- Run Rapid Install again to configure and start the server processes. See *Upgrading Your System in Installing Oracle Applications* for details.
- Complete the remaining Category 4 steps.
- Review the implementation and/or setup steps in the product-specific documentation. These steps "turn on" or set up some of the features added during the upgrade. The *Oracle Applications Documentation* CD contains all product-specific documentation.
- Complete the Category 5 and Category 6 steps, and any associated product-specific implementation steps.
- Complete the tasks in the *Finishing Your Upgrade* chapter in this manual.

---

---

**Note:** If you do not complete these tasks in the order listed, the success of the upgrade could be compromised.

---

---

## Release 11i System Requirements

Requirements for CPU, memory, and disk space (for log files and backups) are typically much larger during an upgrade than at runtime.

## Technology Stack Components

During the upgrade process, Rapid Install installs and configures required technology stack components including:

- Oracle8i database server (8.1.7.4)
- Oracle Forms Server, Oracle Reports Server, Oracle Graphics
- Developer6i
- Oracle HTTP iAS server (1.0.2.2)
- JInitiator on the PC client

See the Certify web page for the latest certification information. Access Certify from Oracle*MetaLink* (Product Lifecycle > Certifications).

**Additional Information:** See Frequently Asked Questions about Certify, Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 119139.1.

## Software

This release of Oracle Applications requires Java Development Kit (JDK). See What to Do First in *Installing Oracle Applications* for more information.

UNIX and Windows platforms require additional tools to complete the installation. Both single-user and multi-user installations require the following utilities, which must be installed on all server nodes in the PATH of the user account that runs Rapid Install:

### UNIX:

ar, cc, ld, make

### Windows:

cc, gnumake, link

See *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes* for platform-specific software requirements.

## CPU

The CPU requirements for an upgrade depend on many factors, including:

- The size of the database
- The amount of data in the primary product installation group (if you are converting to Multi-Org)

- The number of operating units for which seed data is being replicated
- The impact of the change from rule-based optimizer to cost-based optimizer (CBO) on customized code
- The number and duration of long-running processes in Release 11i products

See *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* for recommendations on the number of workers to use during the upgrade. See also Long-running Processes.

## Memory

To calculate the memory requirements for the upgrade, consider:

- Number of forms servers
- Number of concurrent users
- Infrastructure requirements for multi-tiered architecture

## Database Size

To estimate the increase in required disk space for upgrading, consider the number of languages being installed and the change in the data model — largely driven by Order Management and Sales/Marketing and Services products.

**Additional Information:** See the product-specific documentation for more information. See also Appendix A in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

## Tablespace

Your database administrator should take into account the following types of tablespaces, which should be set up before you upgrade:

- SYSTEM tablespace, largely affected by the number of packages and languages.
- Rollback segments
- Temporary tablespace (usually TEMP)
- Product table and index tablespaces, including default tablespace, additional space for languages, and country-specific functionality

Examine the system tablespace, temp tablespace, and rollback segment sizes during the upgrade test runs to determine the minimum space needed to create new Applications PL/SQL packages in the production upgrade. We recommend setting a minimum SYSTEM tablespace of 7 GB and a minimum TEMP tablespace of 1 GB

before you perform the upgrade. Note that these are recommendations only. You should track and adjust the sizing based on your testing experience.

In addition, use the script provided in Step 2 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Chapter 2 to help create tablespaces for new products and resize tablespace for existing ones.

**Additional Information:** See Creating Tablespaces in *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*.

### **Block Size**

*This release requires an ORACLE database blocksize of 8K or larger.* In addition to providing significant performance improvement, Oracle Applications has some indexes that require a minimum blocksize of 8K. If you use a 2K or 4K ORACLE blocksize, you must migrate the database to a blocksize of 8K (or larger) before you run AutoUpgrade.

### **Batch Commit Size**

Batch commit size determines the number of rows to commit at one time when certain scripts run. Starting with Release 11.0, many scripts that process potentially large quantities of data accept a parameter that specifies the batch commit size. This parameter is automatically passed by AutoUpgrade to the script.

AutoUpgrade prompts you to enter a batch commit size and displays a default value. We recommend that you accept the default.

## **Scheduling Time for the Upgrade**

In an upgrade, *crucial downtime* refers to the period of time when users cannot use Oracle Applications. It includes the time it takes to perform all the Category 3 and 4 upgrade steps, plus the time it takes for AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch to run.

To provide a baseline for upgrade execution times and an opportunity to work out any upgrade issues ahead of time, perform a test upgrade of your existing system, using hardware similar to what you use for the production upgrade. A test upgrade is especially important if your system has been customized.

During a test upgrade, use the Release 11i Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet to calculate crucial downtime, total upgrade time by category, and total upgrade time overall. The timing statistics gathered on the Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet allow you to establish a benchmark for subsequent test upgrades and, finally, for the

production upgrade. The spreadsheet is included on the *Oracle Applications Documentation CD*.

### **The Upgrade Manual Script**

The Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) examines the current configuration and creates a report that lists the upgrade steps that *do not* apply to your system. Because TUMS reports on a unique configuration, its output is relevant only to your upgrade. Omitting the steps listed in the TUMS report can significantly reduce the time it takes to perform the upgrade.

Run TUMS in Category 1, before you begin the upgrade process. For information on downloading and applying the TUMS patch, see *Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) Utility* (Doc ID: 230538.1) on *OracleMetaLink*.

### **Upgrade Assistance Program**

The Upgrade Assistance Program, provided at no extra charge by Oracle Support Services, helps you plan and perform the upgrade, provides a patching strategy, and ensures a smooth upgrade project. It includes a utility called the E-Business 11i Upgrade Assistant, which consolidates the information in *Upgrading Oracle Applications* and other upgrade resources to take you through the upgrade in a methodical and repeatable sequence of steps. For more information about the Upgrade Assistance Program and E-Business 11i Upgrade Assistant, see *OracleMetaLink* document 215527.1.

### **Minimizing Upgrade Downtime**

Rapid Install creates the new file systems for the application tier components and the new file system for the database. This eliminates the need for many previously required tasks, such as re-linking application executables and generating form, report, and message files.

In addition to performing a test upgrade and running the TUMS utility, consider these tips for reducing downtime:

- Perform all Category 1 and 2 steps before making the system unavailable to end users. We recommend you migrate or upgrade the database in Category 1.
- The upgrade may require more database server resources than normal runtime usage. Some customers enjoy performance gains by installing the administration server on a different node than the database server, thus allowing more CPU to participate in the upgrade.

- Clone the system. Create an identical copy of the existing Oracle Applications system to use in the upgrade. Refer to Cloning Your System in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* for details.

### **Migrating or Upgrading the Oracle Database**

You can migrate or upgrade the existing database either in Category 1 or in Category 3.

---

---

**Note:** Do not migrate or upgrade the database twice — if you complete this step in Category 1, do not perform it again in Category 3.

---

---

If you migrate or upgrade in Category 1, you must apply the appropriate interoperability patch for your Oracle Applications release level so that the 10.7 or 11.0 Applications continue to work with the 8.1.7.4 database until you run AutoUpgrade to complete the product upgrade. The database migration or upgrade requirements are different if you migrate or upgrade in Category 3. *Read and understand both sets of steps before you begin.*

Running Rapid Install creates a complete Oracle8i 8.1.7.4 technology stack. While you may install the database on your own, Oracle recommends that you use the 8.1.7.4 technology stack so that all scripts function without need for modification.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle8i Migration* and *Oracle8i Utilities*.

## **Long-running processes**

Certain changes in Release 11i have resulted in long-running processes, which may require tuning to optimize performance during the upgrade. To identify long-running processes, review \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out/adt00001.lst (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out\adt00001.lst (Windows).

Long-running processes have been identified in the following areas:

- conversion of database from rules-based optimization of SQL queries to cost-based optimization.
- migration of existing date and non-integer data from character columns to date and number type columns. See Chapter 5, Global Accounting Engine Tasks.
- certain Oracle Payables conversion scripts

Performance of some upgrade scripts can be significantly improved by changing the following database settings for the duration of the upgrade.

### **hash\_area\_size (init.ora parameter)**

Controls the amount of memory that Oracle can use for hash join processing. Oracle recommends a value of 30 MB for the hash area size, provided that the database server has sufficient available memory. You can calculate the maximum amount of memory that can be used for this parameter by dividing the amount of available memory (after taking into consideration the size of the SGA and the user processes) by the value of the `parallel_max_servers`.

### **parallel\_max\_servers (init.ora parameter)**

Controls the maximum number of parallel query server processes running in the database. Oracle recommends a value equal to 4 times the number of CPUs.

### **Temporary tablespace**

This space (usually `TEMP`) should be created as a locally managed tablespace using the temporary file option with a uniform allocation size. If the temporary tablespace is not defined in this way, drop the temporary tablespace and recreate it using the following example as a template:

```
SQL> drop tablespace TEMP;
SQL> create TEMPORARY tablespace TEMP
      tempfile 'ts_p_temp1.dbf' size 2048M
      EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL
      UNIFORM SIZE 1M;
```

To verify that the temporary tablespace has been created, execute the following:

```
SQL> select CONTENTS,EXTENT_MANAGEMENT,ALLOCATION_TYPE
      from dba_tablespaces
      where tablespace_name='TEMP';
```

The query output should be:

CONTENTS	EXTENT_MANAGEMENT	ALLOCATION_TYPE
TEMPORARY	LOCAL	UNIFORM

After the upgrade, change the `hash_area_size` and `parallel_max_servers` settings back to the defaults, and restore the previous storage parameters for the temporary tablespace. During the upgrade, use a 1 MB uniform extent size for the temporary

tablespace. After the upgrade, lower the extent size for the temporary tablespace to a value that is less than 1 MB (for example, 128 K).

**Additional Information:** See *Database Initialization Parameters in Oracle Applications* (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 216205.1).

## Important Upgrade Considerations

Some of the new Release 11*i* functionality may affect the way you use Applications products after the upgrade. For a list of changes and enhancements, refer to the *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*, the *About* documents on OracleMetaLink, and the product implementation manuals and user's guides.

The *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes* is released with each major release, so the current version documents only the changes between Release 11.0 and 11.5.1. However, there have been many enhancements since that time. These enhancements are documented in the Release Content Documents (RCD). In addition, data model changes are available in the *Electronic Technical Reference Manual* (eTRM). Both documents are available on OracleMetaLink.

### Architecture

*Oracle Applications Concepts* contains a complete discussion of the architecture in this release, including information about the Oracle Applications multi-tiered architecture, Release 11*i* enhancements, language support, file system structure, and the basic data model.

### Backup

We strongly recommend that you back up the database before you begin the upgrade as a safeguard against unexpected data loss and application upgrade errors.

### Character-mode Environments

If you are upgrading from a character-mode environment, there are significant infrastructure considerations. For example, you must understand which type of server requires an installation of each product. See *Oracle Applications Concepts* for more information.

### Cost-based Optimization (CBO)

*Optimization* is the process of choosing the most efficient way to execute a SQL statement. In the Oracle RDBMS, and in Oracle Applications Release 11*i*, the Oracle

optimizer uses cost-based, rather than rule-based, optimization. *Cost-based optimization* dynamically determines the most efficient access paths and join methods for executing SQL statements by taking into account statistics such as the size of each table and the selectivity of each query condition.

Release 11*i* represents a transition from rule-based to cost-based optimization. Because CBO is enabled during the AutoUpgrade process, the pre-upgrade steps in this book are rule-based, while steps performed after you run AutoUpgrade (post-upgrade) are cost-based. You may want to evaluate the impact of CBO on custom code in the test system before you begin the upgrade.

**Additional Information:** See Cost-based Optimization in *Oracle Applications Concepts*, Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*, and Introduction to Optimization in *Oracle8i Concepts*.

## Database Initialization Parameters

Initialization parameters required at each stage of the upgrade may vary depending on when you upgrade your database. You should review the requirements for these parameters before you begin the upgrade. See Oracle*MetaLink* document *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* (Doc ID: 216205.1).

## Dropping Obsolete Columns

During the upgrade process, the Oracle RDBMS DROP COLUMN command marks Oracle Applications columns as unused in the data dictionary, making it possible for the system administrator to drop the columns and reclaim the associated space. It is a good idea to plan this reclamation ahead of time because the process locks the associated tables. Once the space is reclaimed, the upgraded data model looks more like a fresh install (except for customizations). Note that DROP COLUMN has no effect on custom columns.

## Inactive or Partially Implemented Installed Products

You must perform upgrade steps for every installed product regardless of which products you actually use. For example, if you have Oracle Human Resources fully installed but only partially implemented, you must still perform the Oracle Human Resources upgrade steps.

All products are installed in the database. Therefore, some steps, like dropping obsolete objects after the upgrade is complete, must be performed for all products.

---

---

**Note:** In a Multi-Org installation, you defined an Operating Unit and set the site-level AOL profile option MO:Operating Unit to use this new operating unit. *Do not delete this profile option.* If you do, you cannot complete the upgrade process successfully.

---

---

## Installed vs. Licensed Products

Rapid Install creates the Oracle Applications file system, and AutoUpgrade upgrades all database objects, regardless of license status. When maintaining Oracle Applications, AutoPatch copies only the files appropriate for the APPL\_TOP configuration. For example, report files are not copied into an APPL\_TOP that is configured as a forms server. In addition, to save time during patching, AutoPatch does not generate any files for unlicensed products.

## Invoker Rights

The new Oracle RDBMS Invoker Rights feature ensures that most packages are installed only in the APPS schema. Other schemas, such as the MRC schema, have synonyms to the packages in the APPS schema, and the corresponding packages in the APPS schema have grants to the MRC schema. PL/SQL routines use Invoker Rights to access the package in the APPS schema. In an MRC database, this can markedly decrease the size of the database and shorten the time needed for upgrade, patching, and maintenance tasks.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Concepts* for more information.

## Multiple Databases

When performing upgrade steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, run each step from \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX), or from %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows), instead of \$APPL\_TOP/admin/out to reduce the likelihood of overwriting files.

## Shared Products

You typically perform upgrade steps only for the products you have fully installed. However, you may need to perform upgrade steps for some products installed as shared (dependent) products. To determine the dependent products you have installed, run \$AD\_TOP/sql/adutconf.sql (UNIX) or %AD\_TOP%\sql\adutconf.sql (Windows).

## Windows Platforms

On Windows platforms, Release 11*i* application tier components (forms server, web server, concurrent processing server, and admin server) must be installed on nodes that do *not* have existing Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 installations. If you install Oracle Applications 11*i* on a node that has existing Applications 10.7 or 11.0 components, the registry settings will be changed and those components will no longer be usable.

## 10SC Global Demo Database

Data in Production 16 (10SC) Global Demo databases is not supported in Release 11*i*. See Oracle Common Modules Tasks in Chapter 3 for more information.

# Languages and Character Sets

Each additional language may take up to 200 MB of space in the database. Without sufficient space for this growth you may encounter errors during the upgrade or while applying the translations. If you do, increase the affected table space and restart the process.

**Additional Information:** See Managing Tablespaces in *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*.

You must retain the original language configuration until the entire upgrade is complete (including the post-upgrade and finishing steps). After you complete the upgrade, use the License Manager to change the language, if necessary.

## Character Sets

If you need to change the character set of the APPL\_TOP, you can do so either before or after the upgrade. If you choose to change it before the upgrade, make the selection on the appropriate Rapid Install Wizard screen. But, you must wait until after the upgrade to change the database character set. *The character set of the APPL\_TOP must be compatible with the database character set at all times — do not change it before the upgrade in anticipation of changing the database character set after the upgrade.* Changing character sets in the database is considered an Oracle Consulting solution.

---

---

**Warning:** If you change the character set on the application tier to one that is *not* compatible with the current database character set, the upgraded installation will be unusable.

---

---

## Enhanced Multilingual Support

External documents, such as customer invoices and packing slips, are available in the language of the customer's choice, allowing users to enter and view information in their language of choice.

---

---

**Attention:** If you are installing additional languages, see Internationalization Support in *Oracle Applications Concepts*.

---

---

## Forms and Reports

Developer6i (patch set 6) is required for this release. It is delivered by Rapid Install. Note the following changes to forms and reports in this release.

### Flexible date formats

Oracle Applications supports Flexible Date Format in Forms Developer 6i. Any format for which SQL provides a mask is valid, and any dates passed to the database are stored canonically with the exception of reports, which always display dates as DD-MON-RRRR.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Concepts*. See also Appendix B in *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

### Multiple radix support

Enter and view numbers in forms using the radix format appropriate to the country of operation, using either the period (full stop) character or comma as the radix. For example, you can enter 1.02 and 100,000.02 or 1,02 and 100.000,02. The Oracle database server stores all numbers and dates uniformly. Site level preferences set during installation by Rapid Install determine which character is interpreted as the radix.

## Customized Environments

Customized code may require special attention during an upgrade. The instructions in this book assume that you have followed the standards for customizing Oracle Applications *exactly* as described in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* and the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products*. To preserve customizations and minimize the impact during the upgrade, you must:

- Follow the instructions set out in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

- Read and understand the information about upgrading customizations in the Customization Standards chapter of the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
- Maintain complete documentation for customizations
- Back up customizations before the upgrade

## Upgrades and Patches

Pay special attention to the Oracle Applications Upgrades and Patches section in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*. It contains important information about how the upgrade treats customizations.

---

---

**Warning:** Customizing any concurrent program definitions, menus, value sets, or other seeded data provided by Oracle Applications is not supported. The upgrade process overwrites these customizations.

---

---

## Protecting Data in Renamed Files

Because files can be renamed by various people for a variety of reasons, it is a good idea to protect them during the upgrade. Therefore, if you have renamed files using the <filename>old, <filename>new, or any other generic designation, rename them before you begin the upgrade to prevent them from being accidentally overwritten.

## Customized Reports and Forms

SQL\*Report (RPT), the flexfield APIs FlexRpt, and FlexSQL are no longer supported. Rewrite any custom reports that use these programs with a tool such as Oracle Reports Developer.

**Additional Information:** See Coding Oracle Reports Concurrent Programs in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*. See also Upgrading Custom Forms to Release 11i in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

## Customized Help Files

The help files in this release are in HTML format, making them easy to modify using a commercial web browser/editor. You cannot reapply previously customized help files to Release 11i. Therefore, it is important that you save the pre-upgrade customized help files as a reference.

**Additional Information:** See Customizing Oracle Applications Help in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

## Application-specific Information

The information in this section applies to specific Applications in this release. For more information, see *Release Content Documents and Features Summary Matrices* on *OracleMetaLink*.

### **Sales and Marketing, Service, Incentive Compensation**

If you have any of the following applications and your system is Oracle Applications Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i, you can upgrade directly to Oracle Applications 11.5.9. The following products are covered in this upgrade process:

- Marketing
- Sales
- Incentive (Sales) Compensation
- Service
- Contracts
- Install Base

If you are using any of these products in Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 of Oracle Applications, follow the instructions in *OracleMetaLink* note 236954.1 in addition to this book as you upgrade to Release 11*i*.

### **Public Sector/University**

The following new and redesigned Public Sector/University products are included in this release:

- Oracle Public Sector Budgeting
- Oracle Public Sector Financials (International)
- Oracle Grants Accounting
- Oracle Grants Proposal
- Oracle Labor Distribution
- Oracle Student System
- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials

These products add functionality built on existing Oracle Applications products. Pay special attention to the manual upgrade steps in this book, as well as the implementation and/or setup steps in the product-specific documentation.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Version 2.0 applies to Oracle Applications Release 10.7, and Version 3.3 applies to Release 11.0.3.

---

---

## FlexBuilder/Account Generator

In Release 11.0, FlexBuilder was replaced by the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow.

**Additional Information:** See Overview of the Account Generator in *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*. See also *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide* and *Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide*.

---

---

**Note:** References to FlexBuilder apply to Oracle Projects only with respect to project transactions that interface with Oracle Payables and Oracle Purchasing. For other purposes, Oracle Projects continues to use AutoAccounting.

---

---

If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7 to build Accounting Flexfield code combinations, you must have Oracle Workflow installed and set up to use the Account Generator. AutoUpgrade installs Oracle Workflow for you. However, you must complete some additional setup steps after the AutoUpgrade processing. If you plan to customize the Account Generator configuration, install the Oracle Workflow Builder on the desktop client.

Before the upgrade, review the way each product uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Consider whether the default Account Generator processes are appropriate for each product, and appropriate for each set of books that uses a unique Accounting Flexfield structure. For each structure and set of books, you can choose to:

- use the default Account Generator process
- use the previously customized Release 10.7 FlexBuilder assignment created for Release 11i in the upgrade process
- customize the default Account Generator process

This choice determines which post-upgrade steps you must perform.

## AR Seed Data Changes in Release 11.0

To interface draft invoices to Oracle Receivables, Oracle Projects pre-defines a context for the AR Transaction flexfield, and also pre-seeds a batch source, transaction types, and grouping and ordering rules for Projects invoices in Receivables. The following changes were made in Release 11.0 to the Oracle Projects seed data in Oracle Receivables.

Seed Data Type	Old Name	New Name
Transaction Flexfield Context	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Batch Source	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Transaction Type	PA Invoice	Projects Invoice
Transaction Type	PA Credit Memo	Projects Credit Memo
Grouping Rules	PA Grouping Rule	Projects Grouping Rule
Ordering Rules	PA Ordering Rule	Projects Ordering Rule

In new installations, you see only the new data. In upgrades from Release 10.7, these seed data changes do not apply. However, you continue to see the new values (PROJECTS) as well as the old values (PA). Continue to use *only* the old values. New data is replicated for the new operating units created in this release.

## User-defined Collection Elements

Collection elements Available Quantity, Completed Quantity, and Ship To Location are pre-defined and seeded in Oracle Quality. Existing user-defined collection elements with these names are renamed with the prefix @ during the upgrade. For example, Available Quantity becomes @Available Quantity.

As a result, after the upgrade you have two collection elements with similar names. When you create collection plans or run reports and queries, consider which collection element to use: the Quality-defined collection element or the renamed user-defined collection element.

---

---

## Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software

This chapter describes the Category 1 steps — they require nothing from the new software. After you complete them, you can continue to use current Oracle Applications environment. We recommend that you perform these steps as soon as you know that you will be upgrading to Release 11*i* of Oracle Applications.

- Database Upgrade Tasks on page 1-2
- System Administration Tasks on page 1-6
- Application Object Library Tasks on page 1-7
- Oracle Alert Tasks on page 1-7
- Oracle Workflow Tasks on page 1-8
- Oracle Cash Management Tasks on page 1-9
- Oracle Payables Tasks on page 1-9
- Oracle Receivables Tasks on page 1-10
- Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks on page 1-12
- Oracle Projects Tasks on page 1-14
- Oracle Human Resources Tasks on page 1-16
- Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks on page 1-19
- Oracle Work in Process Tasks on page 1-21
- Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks on page 1-22
- Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks on page 1-22

- Oracle Service Tasks on page 1-22

## Database

You must complete the tasks in this section before you perform the Applications Technology steps or the product-specific steps.

*Before you begin these tasks, you should take advantage of The Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS). It creates a report that lists the upgrade steps that *do not* apply to your installation. You can safely omit from the upgrade any step on the list. For information on creating the TUMS report, see *Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) Utility* (Doc ID: 230538.1) on [OracleMetaLink](#).*

## Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)	Database Administrator
2. Maintain multilingual tables (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Verify operating system login (required)	System Administrator
4. Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
5. Migrate or upgrade the Oracle database (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
6. Back up Oracle Applications and customizations (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: **Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide**

Users must log off: Yes

Make a cold backup of the Oracle Applications database. Use it to restore the database if you encounter problems during the upgrade process.

---



---

**Warning:** Shut down the database with the **NORMAL** option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the **IMMEDIATE** or **ABORT** option.

---



---

---

## Step 2: Maintain multilingual tables (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Installation, Release 10.7 and Release 11	Users must log off: No
---	------------------------

If your system has active languages other than American English, ensure the validity and accuracy of the multi-lingual tables by running the option to maintain multi-lingual tables from the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration. For Release 11.0, the log file is in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/log (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\log (Windows), where <SID> is the name of the database against which you ran AD Administration. For Release 10.7, the file is in \$APPL\_TOP/install/log (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\install\log (Windows). There should be no ORACLE errors.

## Step 3: Verify operating system login (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator/System Administrator
---------------------------------------	---

Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
----------------------	------------------------

You need one main operating system login (typically applmgr) to run AutoUpgrade and to manage Oracle Applications product files. Because you are upgrading, the Applications login has already been created. Be sure that you can log in to all the machines in the environments that are affected by the upgrade process.

**Additional Information:** See Creating Login Accounts in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

## Step 4: Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide	Users must log off: Yes
---	-------------------------

AutoUpgrade automatically runs a script called addrbco.sql, which drops database objects that match standard Oracle prefixes. For example, if you have a custom stored procedure named GL\_CUSTOM in the schema for Oracle General Ledger, it is dropped during the upgrade. An object named XXGL\_CUSTOM would not be affected. To preserve these custom database objects, relocate them to another schema or rename them so that they do not use the Oracle standard prefixes.

---

---

**Warning:** Database object names should contain at least four characters for the product short name, followed by an underscore. Use only letters, digits, and underscores when naming database objects. For example, you could define the custom application to use the short name CUST, and database objects to use CUST\_.

---

---

**Additional Information:** See Naming Standards in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

### **Step 5: Migrate or upgrade the Oracle database (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator /  
System Administrator

---

Reference manual: Oracle8i Interoperability Patch readme file, Oracle8i Reference Guide, Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures

Users must log off: Yes

---

You must migrate to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7.4 as a part of the upgrade process. If you do not migrate now, you must migrate or upgrade the database before you run AutoUpgrade. See Step 2 in Database Upgrade Tasks in Chapter 3.

---

---

**Attention:** The migrated database must have a block size of 8k. See Block Size in the Preface for more information.

---

---

1. Follow the instructions in the *Oracle Applications Interoperability Notes* for the appropriate Oracle Applications release. (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 148901.1 for Release 10.7 or Doc ID: 148902.1 for Release 11.0.)
2. Carefully review the information on initialization parameters in *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 216205.1). Set the appropriate parameters in `init.ora`.
3. Gather database statistics for CBO

This release requires the Cost-based Optimizer (CBO). Use the FND\_STATS package (patch 1268797 for *pre-upgrade* use only) to gather database statistics. Download the update file from OracleMetaLink and apply it using AutoPatch. Then, generate CBO statistics by running the following script:

**For 10.7 UNIX users:**

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patchsc/107/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

**For 10.7 Windows users:**

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patchsc\107\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

**For 11.0 UNIX users:**

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patch/110/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

**For 11.0 Windows users:**

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patch\110\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

**Additional Information:** See Cost-based Optimization (CBO) in the Preface.

**Step 6: Back up Oracle Applications and customizations (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Back up existing Oracle Applications product files, product customizations, customized help files (in HTML), and the Oracle Applications database before you begin to unload the Oracle Applications software.

## Applications Technology

This portion of the upgrade applies to all users. Complete these tasks before you perform the product-specific steps.

## System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Determine attachment file upload directory (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Preserve the CUSTOM library (recommended)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Determine attachment file upload directory (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7NCA, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

Users must log off: No

In Releases 10.7NCA and 11.0, you could attach file-type documents to any application entity with Oracle Applications Attachments. The files were stored in a directory on the application server, with its location stored in the Attachment File Directory profile option. In Release 11*i*, file-type attachments are stored in the database. In this step, determine the location of existing attachment files. You will load them into the database in Step 13 of the System Administration Tasks in Chapter 4.

1. As the system administrator, choose Profile > System.
2. In the Find System Profile Values window, type *Attachment File Directory* in the Profile field. Press Find.
3. If a profile option has been set, write down its current directory path. If there is no profile option, there are no attachment files to be upgraded.
4. In the operating system on the application server, verify that there are files in the directory specified by the profile option setting.

### Step 2: Preserve the CUSTOM library (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

Users must log off: No

Make a backup of the CUSTOM library (CUSTOM.pll) to use when you migrate the library to Release 11*i* in Step 10 of the System Administration Tasks in Chapter 4.

**Additional Information:** See Using the CUSTOM Library in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

## Application Object Library Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6i (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

### Step 1: Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6i (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0, 10SC (SmartClient)</b>	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
--	---

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Oracle Applications User Interface Standards</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
--	-------------------------------

If you are upgrading from the Release 10.7 character-mode SQL\*Forms 2.3, rewrite custom forms in Oracle Forms 6i. If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient), Release 10.7, or Release 11.0, and the forms are already in Oracle Forms 4.5, upgrade them now.

**Additional Information:** See Customization Standards in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

## Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Purge Alert and Action Set Check alerts (recommended)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Purge Alert and Action Set Check alerts (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Database Administrator</b>
--	---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

For the best upgrade performance, it's a good idea to keep the ALR\_ACTION\_HISTORY table small (20,000 rows or less). To selectively purge alerts in this table:

**For 10.7:**

Download and apply patch 451137. Then, from the AOL (APPLSYS) schema, run `al451137.sql` (located in `ALR_TOP/patch/107.sql`). The script prompts for *numdays* (the age of the history to be deleted). History older than the number of days entered will be deleted.

**For 11.0:**

Download and apply patch 451137. Then, as the Alert Manager, perform these steps:

1. Navigate to the Alerts window (Alerts > Define) and choose Query > Enter.
2. Type `Purge%` in the Name field and choose Query > Run.
3. Click Enable and save the screen. The default for Numdays is 30 and for Application is ALL. If you leave these fields blank, Alert Checks older than 30 days will be deleted for all applications.
4. Choose Request > Check to run Purge Alert and Action Set Checks. Enter "Oracle Alert" in the Application field, and "Purge" in the Alert Parameter field.

## Oracle Workflow Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Upgrade to Oracle Workflow 2.0.3 (required)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Upgrade to Oracle Workflow 2.0.3 (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities Users must log off: No

To complete the upgrade to Release 11*i*, you must be using version 2.0.3 of Oracle Workflow. Use the following command in SQL\*Plus to determine your current version:

```
select text from wf_resources where name = 'WF_VERSION';
```

If this command returns the version "2.0.3", no further action is necessary. If the version is not 2.0.3, apply patch 668409 before you continue with the Release 11*i* upgrade. The patch is available on [OracleMetaLink](#).

## Financials

Review this section and complete only the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

### Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Back up custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

#### Step 1: Back up custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>Reconciliation Open Interface (Oracle Cash Management User's Guide)</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>CE_999_BACKUP</b>	

If you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface and customized it to work in your environment, back up CE\_999\_INTERFACE\_V (view) and CE\_999\_PKG (package) to the APPS account, or write a script to recreate them after the upgrade. You will reinstall them in Step 1 of the Oracle Cash Management Tasks in Chapter 6.

### Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Complete outstanding payment batches (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

#### Step 1: Complete outstanding payment batches (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Cancel Payment Batch and Confirm Payment Batch (Payables Reference Manual, Release 10.7); (Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11)</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>AP_COMPLETE_OUTSTANDING_PAYMENTS</b>	

In character-mode, navigate to the Cancel Payment Batch form (\Navigate Controls Payment ResetPaymentBatch) to see if there are any outstanding payment batches and to confirm or cancel a payment batch.

In GUI, as the Payables Manager, choose Payments > Entry > Payment Batches. Query for in-process payment batches. Complete or cancel batches by choosing the Actions button and using the Actions window.

## Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Rename custom tax structure (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Save custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
4. Migrate customers as persons (conditionally required)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Rename custom tax structure (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **No**

TUMS Step Key: **AR\_RENAME\_CUSTOM\_TAX**

If you have created a customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure, rename the customized structures so AutoUpgrade does not overwrite them. AutoUpgrade creates the following default structures: Province, Province.City, City, State.City, State.County.City, No Validation - Country.

---



---

**Note:** Name the customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure something other than one of the six default structures.

---



---

---

## Step 2: Save custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Receivables Tax Manual

Users must log off: No

TUMS Step Key: AR\_SAVE\_TAX\_VENDOR\_VIEW

---

If you have implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized the Tax Vendor Extension views, save the customized copies or write a script to recreate them. You will reinstall these views in Step 2 of the Oracle Receivables Tasks in Chapter 5. Once you complete this step, do not add any more customized views until *after* you run AutoUpgrade.

---

**Attention:** Software to integrate Taxware (previously known as AVP) and Vertex is included in Receivables Release 11 and 11i. If you previously integrated Receivables Release 10 with Taxware or Vertex using software supplied by the Oracle Design and Migration Services (DMS), see *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use System Release 11i*.

---

## Step 3: Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)

Reference manual: Oracle Receivables User's Guide

Users must log off: No

TUMS Step Key: AR\_VERIFY\_GAINS\_LOSSES\_ACCOUNTS

---

For each organization where you have defined a Realized Gains, Realized Losses, or Cross Currency Rounding account, verify that each account is enabled and valid as of the date you perform the upgrade.

**Step 4: Migrate customers as *persons* (conditionally required)**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**Users must log off: **No**TUMS Step Key: **AR\_MIGRATE\_CUSTOMERS**

Customer records migrated to Oracle Receivables are brought in, by default, as organizations (companies). To migrate a particular customer (or set of customers) as *persons*, set the CUSTOMER\_CATEGORY\_CODE in the RA\_CUSTOMERS table to CONSUMER for each such customer.

**Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks**

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Import outstanding bank collection documents (required)	Brazil
2. Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments (recommended)	Colombia
3. Print all completed transactions (required)	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia

**Step 1: Import outstanding bank collection documents (required)**Perform for this country: **Brazil**Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**Users must log off: **No**Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**TUMS Step Key: **JL\_IMPORT\_OUTSTANDING\_BANK**

Import all bank collection documents from the Bank Collection Documents interface tables. From the Brazilian Payables responsibility, run the Import Bank Collection Documents program from the Standard Request Submission windows (Other > Requests > Run). Use the Imported Collection Documents window (Collection Documents > Imported > Collection Docs) to review and fix all rejected bank collection documents.

**Additional Information:** See Entering and Associating Collection Documents in *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*.

## Step 2: Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments (recommended)

Perform for this country: <b>Colombia</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>Yes</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JL_RESTORE_ARCH_APPRAISALS</b>	

With Oracle Assets for Colombia, you can run a technical appraisal against multiple depreciation books. Restoring archived technical appraisals and adjustments ensures that data created in Release 11 is upgraded to meet Release 11*i* standards.

---

**Note:** If you omit this step, the technical appraisal data archived in Release 11 is not upgraded to the Release 11*i* format, and you cannot restore it after the upgrade. Also, you could unknowingly revalue a technical appraisal against a book in which the appraisal was already revalued in Release 11.

---

**Additional Information:** See Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals in *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

## Step 3: Print all completed transactions (required)

Perform for this country: <b>Argentina, Brazil, Colombia</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JL_PRINT_ALL_COMPLETED_TRX</b>	

You must successfully print all completed transactions *before* upgrading to Release 11*i*. Incidents such as printing errors can cause a mismatch between an invoice transaction number and the number on a pre-numbered form. In such cases, use the Regional Receivables Copy and Void process to maintain accurate audit information. You can copy and void only those transactions that have *not* been transferred to General Ledger.

---



---

**WARNING:** If you print completed transactions *after* the upgrade, printing errors could irreparably corrupt the audit trail for transactions you have already transferred to General Ledger.

---



---

## Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

### Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Clear Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Transfer asset lines and post mass additions (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
4. Upgrade to the new summarization model (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Projects)

#### Step 1: Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 (all versions except character mode), 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
--	---

Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
----------------------	------------------------

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes
----------------------------------

Complete the transfer and tieback processes for all cost and revenue transactions and invoices during the normal processing cycle.

Process Name	Process Name
PRC: Tieback Expense Reports from Payables	PRC: Tieback Invoices from Receivables
PRC: Tieback Labor Costs from General Ledger	PRC: Tieback Revenues from General Ledger
PRC: Tieback Total Burdened Cost from GL	PRC: Tieback Usage Costs from GL

To run a process, choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter the process name and submit the request. Run each process again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

### **Step 2: Clear Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_CLEAR\_TRANS\_INTERFACE\_TBL**

Perform only if you have any pending transactions in the transaction interface table (PA\_TRANSACTION\_INTERFACE\_ALL).

Import all pending transactions from the transaction interface table into Oracle Projects. Choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Transaction Import and submit the request. The Transaction Import process prompts you for a Transaction Source.

To be certain that the table is cleared, run the Transaction Import process for each Transaction Source. If the process rejects any records, fix them and run the Transaction Import process again, or delete the records from the table.

Run this process again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

### **Step 3: Transfer asset lines and post mass additions (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_TRANSFER\_ASSET\_LINES**

If you use the Capital Projects feature in Oracle Projects, complete the transfer of asset lines to Oracle Assets as part of the normal processing cycle.

- To transfer asset lines, choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Interface Assets and submit the request.

- To create assets from the assets lines you transferred, run the Post Mass Additions program in Oracle Assets. From the Fixed Assets Manager responsibility, choose Mass Additions > Post Mass Additions.

Run these processes again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

#### **Step 4: Upgrade to the new summarization model (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)</b>
---------------------------------	---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>Yes</b>
---

TUMS Step Key: <b>PA_UPGRADE_TO_SUMMARIZATION_MODEL</b>
---

If you are using the pre-Release 10.7 accumulation model, upgrade to the new summarization model. Choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Update Project Summary Amounts and submit the request. Run this process for all projects.

## Human Resources

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Human Resources products you have installed.

### Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update custom code that references obsolete synonyms (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Update custom reports that reference HRV_ and OTV_ (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Note location of custom script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
4. Update custom code for positions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
5. Update user-defined FastFormula definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
6. Update Vertex geocodes data (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Update custom code that references obsolete synonyms (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**      Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**      Users must log off: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PER\_UPDATE\_CUSTOM\_CODE**

---

AutoUpgrade drops certain synonyms that existed in Release 10.7 for compatibility with Release 9. If you have custom code that references one of the following Release 9 names, replace it with the associated Release 10.7 name.

Release 9 Name	Release 10.7 Name
PER_LETTER_GENERATION_STATUSES	PER_LETTER_GEN_STATUSES
PER_ABSENCE_ATTENDANCE_REASONS	PER_ABS_ATTENDANCE_REASONS
PER_CONTACTS	PER_CONTACT_RELATIONSHIPS
PER_CLASSIFICATIONS	PER_SPECIAL_INFO_TYPES

### Step 2: Update custom reports that reference HRV\_ and OTV\_ (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**      Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**      Users must log off: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PER\_UPDATE\_CUSTOM\_REPORTS**

---

AutoUpgrade drops views that begin HRV\_ and OTV\_. If you have custom reports that contain these prefixes, amend them to reflect the new HRMS Intelligence views.

### Step 3: Note location of custom script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7**      Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**      Users must log off: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PER\_CHECK\_SALARY\_PROP\_VIEW**

---

The Salary Proposals view (formerly PER\_SALARY\_PROPOSALS\_HRV) is renamed to HRU\_SALARY\_PROPOSALS to make its name consistent with other views that can be customized. Run peupl01v.sql from \$PER\_TOP/admin/sql

(UNIX) or %PER\_TOP%\admin\sql (Windows) to create the view. If you have previously customized this script, reapply the changes to the newly delivered script using a text editor. Check the absolute location of the customized script *before* the upgrade since PER\_TOP points to the new code tree *after* upgrade.

#### **Step 4: Update custom code for positions (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: <b>Release 10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>
--	---

---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

---

TUMS Step Key: **PER\_UPDATE\_CUSTOM\_POSITIONS**

---

Before Release 11*i*, position information was stored in the PER\_ALL\_POSITIONS table in: PER\_POSITIONS and PER\_POSITIONS\_V1. Now, position information has been datetracked, and the information stored in the HR\_ALL\_POSITIONS\_F table. New views, HR\_POSITIONS\_V and other standard datetracked views, support datetracked positions. If you have created custom code that references the old position tables or views, update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

#### **Step 5: Update user-defined FastFormula definitions (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: <b>Release 10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>
--	---

---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

---

TUMS Step Key: **PER\_UPDATE\_FF\_DEFINITIONS**

---

In VARCHAR columns, dates are stored in canonical format (YYYY/MM/DD HH24:MI:SS format, instead of DD-MON-YYYY), and decimal numbers are stored using the decimal place character ("."), even for countries where a different character is standard (for example, France uses a comma).

With Oracle FastFormula, you can define database items or functions for use in any formula. If you have previously defined your own database items, change the item definitions and PL/SQL route definitions to reflect these changes.

#### **To change database item definitions:**

On any VARCHAR columns used to store numbers or dates, change ff\_database\_items.definition\_text as follows: use fnd\_number.canonical\_to\_number (instead of to\_number) and fnd\_date.canonical\_to-date (instead of to\_date). For example, a database item with definition text "to\_number (EEV.screen\_entry\_value)" should be changed to "fnd\_number.canonical\_to\_number (EEV.screen\_entry\_value)".

**To change a route definition:**

Remove to\_date (and DD-MON-YYYY) from any date context in ff\_routes.text. For example, a route with text containing "and to\_date(\&B1, 'DD-MON-YYYY') between EE.effective\_start\_date and EE.effective\_end\_date" should be changed to read "and \&B1 between EE.effective\_start\_date and EE.effective\_end\_date".

**Step 6: Update Vertex geocodes data (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>Release 10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Database Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>PER_UPDATE_VERTEX</b>	

Vertex Geocode patches are released annually in July. Each patch requires that you have applied the previous year's patch. AutoUpgrade automatically upgrades the system to the latest Geocode data, if you have applied the prerequisite patch. For example, for an upgrade in April 2003, you must have applied (at least) the Geocode patch for 2001 (released in July 2001). For an upgrade in October 2003, you must have applied the Geocode patch for 2002 (released in July 2002).

**Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks**

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Complete all Multiple Worksite reporting (required)	Technical Specialist (HR)

**Step 1: Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7</b>	Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>PAY_UPDATE_CUSTOM_W4</b>	

If you have built custom code that references old tables or views, update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Before Release 11, tax information was stored in descriptive flexfields in PER\_ASSIGNMENT\_EXTRA\_INFO. There were three views: PAY\_EMP\_FED\_TAX\_V1,

PAY\_EMP\_STATE\_TAX\_V1, and PAY\_EMP\_LOCAL\_TAX\_V1. In Release 11i, the W4 information has been datetracked. There are four new tables:

Table	Table
PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_F	PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_F
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_F	PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_F

The following new views have been created to support datetracked W4:

View	View
PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_V	PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_V	PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_STATE_V	PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_COUNTY_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_CITY_V	

### Step 2: Complete all Multiple Worksite reporting (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (HR)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Applications Online Help</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>PAY_MULTI_WORKSITE</b>	

The Multiple Worksite report uses a new generic hierarchy mechanism, which alters the way you represent the enterprise for the Multiple Worksite report. This feature requires additional setup for Release 10.7 users. Complete all Multiple Worksite reporting based on your previous setup.

---



---

**WARNING:** It is critical that you complete this step as the new reporting structure is the only one supported in Release 11i.

---



---

**Additional Information:** See Creating an Establishment Hierarchy in *Oracle Applications Online Help*.

## Manufacturing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Manufacturing products you have installed.

## Oracle Work in Process Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Close discrete jobs and purge unneeded data – WIP (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > WIP

### Step 1: Close discrete jobs and purge unneeded data – WIP (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (WIP)

Reference manual: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10.7 and Release 11**

Users must log off: No

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

To make the upgrade process run faster, close all discrete jobs that you are no longer transacting and that you are prepared to close, and purge all unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules.

#### To close discrete jobs:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. Then navigate to Discrete Jobs > Close discrete jobs > Close discrete jobs.

#### To purge unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. To purge discrete data, navigate to Discrete Jobs > Purge Discrete jobs > Purge Discrete jobs. To purge repetitive data, navigate to Repetitive > Purge Repetitive Schedules > Purge Repetitive Schedules.

**Additional Information:** See Discrete Job Close, Discrete Job Purge and Repetitive Schedule Purge in *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7*. See also Discrete Manufacturing, Discrete Job Close in *Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11*.

## Public Sector/University

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector/University products you have installed.

## Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred (required)	Application Specialist

### Step 1: Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist

Reference manual: **Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide** User must log off this application: **No**

Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

TUMS Step Key: PSP\_ENSURE\_TRANS\_SUM\_AND\_TRANSFER

Summarize and transfer all transactions. See Chapter 11, Summarize and Transfer Payroll Distributions Procedures, *Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide*.

## Sales and Marketing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Sales and Marketing products you have installed.

### Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks

If you have implemented Oracle Sales or Oracle Sales Compensation, review Oracle*MetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional pre-upgrade steps.

## Service

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Service products you have installed.

### Oracle Service Tasks

If you have implemented Oracle Service, review Oracle*MetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional pre-upgrade steps.

---

---

## Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

This chapter describes Category 2 steps — they require unloading new files, but do not affect the use of Applications products at the existing release level. Unless otherwise noted, perform the steps that require a form from the "old" APPL\_TOP, and steps that require a SQL\*Plus script from the "new" APPL\_TOP.

- Environment Preparation Tasks on page 2-2
- Database Upgrade Tasks on page 2-4
- System Administration Tasks on page 2-8
- Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks on page 2-9
- Oracle General Ledger Tasks on page 2-10
- Global Accounting Engine Tasks on page 2-13
- Oracle Payables Tasks on page 2-17
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks on page 2-21
- Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks on page 2-28
- Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks on page 2-29
- Oracle Projects Tasks on page 2-30
- Oracle Inventory Tasks on page 2-41
- Oracle Order Management Tasks on page 2-42
- Oracle Purchasing Tasks on page 2-50
- Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks on page 2-52

## Environment

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Database Upgrade, the Applications Technology, or the product-specific steps.

---



---

**Note:** On Windows platforms, Release 11*i* application tier components (forms server, web server, concurrent processing server, and administration server) must be installed on nodes that do not have existing Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 installations. If you install Oracle Applications 11*i* on a node that has existing Applications 10.7 or 11.0 components, the registry settings will be changed and those components will no longer be usable.

---



---

## Environment Preparation Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run Rapid Install (required)	Database Administrator
2. Export environment variables and add custom settings (required)	Database Administrator
3. Apply upgrade patches and updates (required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Run Rapid Install (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Database Administrator /System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Installing Oracle Applications**

Users must log off: **No**

Rapid Install sets up the technology stack, creates all necessary file systems for the application tier components (APPL\_TOP and Applications technology stack ORACLE\_HOME), and creates the new ORACLE\_HOME for the Applications database. There is no need to relink executables or generate forms, reports, and message files.

Go to Chapter 1 of *Installing Oracle Applications* and follow the instructions. Then, go to Chapter 4 and follow the steps for upgrading with Rapid Install. When directed to do so, return to the tasks in this book and continue with the pre-upgrade steps.

---

## Step 2: Export environment variables and add custom settings (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator  
/System Administrator

Reference manual: No

Users must log off: No

---

Rapid Install creates APPS<SID>.env (UNIX) or APPS<SID>.cmd (Windows), which sets up the Applications and Applications technology stack environments. Export the necessary environment variables before you run AutoPatch or any of the AD utilities. Log in as the default Applications user and from the new APPL\_TOP, run:

### UNIX (from a Bourne shell):

```
$. APPS<SID>.env
```

### Windows:

```
C:\> APPS<SID>.cmd
```

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Concepts*. See also *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Rapid Install also sets environment variables (such as JAVA\_TOP, OA\_JRE\_TOP, CLASSPATH, OAH\_TOP, and OAD\_TOP) in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/adovars.env (UNIX), or in %APPL\_TOP%\admin\adovars.cmd (Windows registry). If you have customized variables in adovars, you may need to edit this file for all servers (except the database server) to define these environment variables and add any other customized settings, including custom application basepath variables.

---

**Note:** Settings in adovars.env or in adovars.cmd affect all Applications product groups using this APPL\_TOP. If you wish to define database-specific customizations, add logic to ensure it executes only for the relevant product group. UNIX users can also add the logic to the end of the main environment file, after the call to adovars.env. However, this logic must be re-applied any time the main environment file is regenerated.

---

**Step 3: Apply upgrade patches and updates (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator  
/System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Release Notes

Users must log off: No

Using AutoPatch in *pre-install mode*, apply any family consolidated upgrade patches listed in the most current *Oracle Applications Release Notes*. Do not apply the AD mini-pack at this time.

## Database

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Applications Technology steps or the product-specific steps.

## Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Validate APPS schema(s) (recommended)	Database Administrator
2. Set up tablespaces (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Verify custom index privileges (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

**Step 1: Validate APPS schema(s) (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator/System  
AdministratorReference manual: Oracle Applications  
Maintenance Utilities

Users must log off: No

Follow the instructions in this step to generate a list of invalid objects (<APPS schema name>.lst) in the database.

**If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:**

Run the following script.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> \
  @$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg/advrf107.sql <APPS username> <AOL username>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> \
    @%APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg\advrf107.sql <APPS username> <AOL username>
```

**If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:**

To create a list of invalid objects, run Validate APPS Schema(s) from the Maintain Database Objects menu in AD Administration from the old APPL\_TOP.

**For both releases:**

Review the list and take corrective action as indicated. Then, run the Compile APPS schema(s) option from the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration to compile the invalid objects. Correct all problems in the report before you continue with the upgrade.

**Additional Information:** See AD Administration in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

**Step 2: Set up tablespaces (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Database Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>

Perform this step *only* if you have already upgraded the database to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7.4. Before you set up tablespaces, set the init.ora parameter for db\_files=500.

**Convert existing tablespaces to local extent management**

We recommend using local extent management to increase performance. To convert all non-SYSTEM tablespaces from Data Dictionary extent management to local extent management, run the following script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls \
    <SYSTEM password>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls \
    <SYSTEM password>
```

This script lists problems and suggests manual fixes. Review the output (adtbconv.lst), fix the indicated problems, and re-run the script until no problems are reported.

**Additional Information:** See Temporary tablespace in the Preface. See also Managing Tablespaces in *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*.

### **Create tablespaces for new products and resize existing product tablespaces**

Performing this task requires two scripts: adgntbsp.sql gathers information about tablespace requirements and generates adcrtbody.sql using that information; adcrtbody.sql creates (and resizes) product tablespaces.

---

---

**Note:** Creating tablespaces in any other way is not supported, and may compromise the upgrade.

---

---

#### **1. Determine tablespace requirements**

Determine the actions adcrtbody.sql will take by entering a value for <MODE> when you run adgntbsp.sql. Enter NEW to create new product tablespaces (tablespaces for existing products are not affected). Or, enter ALL to create tablespaces for new products *and* to resize existing product tablespaces.

##### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AD_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgntbsp.sql <MODE>
```

##### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AD_TOP\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgntbsp.sql <MODE>
```

#### **2. Create (and resize) product tablespace**

Review the tablespace sizing information listed in adcrtbody.sql, and specify the location of the data files. Then, run adcrtbody.sql from the database server as the SYSTEM user to add new product tablespaces and resize the existing product tablespaces (if <MODE> = ALL). This action also automatically converts newly created tablespaces to local extent management.

**Step 3: Verify custom index privileges (conditionally required)**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Database Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Users must log off: **No**

If a schema owns a custom index on an Oracle Applications table, ensure that the schema has privileges to drop the custom indexes. The ODF Comparison utility may try to drop custom indexes when it maintains Oracle Applications tables. Use the following command to identify schemas that may cause problems:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql
```

The afindxpr.sql script creates two files: afpregdi.lst and afpregdi.sql. The afpregdi.lst file lists custom indexes with a different owner as well as the owner. Use afpregdi.sql to grant DROP ANY INDEX privileges for any TABLE\_OWNERS listed. If the file is empty, no further action is required.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

## Applications Technology Products

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the product-specific steps.

## System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database (recommended)	System Administrator
2. Purge old concurrent requests (recommended)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
---------------------------------------	---

Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
----------------------	------------------------

Some AutoUpgrade output, such as log and restart files, contains passwords to ORACLE accounts related to Oracle Applications, including the SYSTEM account. We recommend that you restrict access to the administration directory that contains these files. Typically, you need to do so only in cases where users require access to the servers for other reasons. Run this step from the new APPL\_TOP. Repeat on all servers where you intend to run AutoUpgrade or AutoPatch.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP
$ chmod 700 admin
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%
C:\> attrib +R admin
```

---



---

**Suggestion:** Retain log and restart files online until you have implemented your products and tested them thoroughly. Oracle Support Services may need access to these files if you encounter problems implementing or using your system.

---



---

### Step 2: Purge old concurrent requests (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
---------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Users must log off: No
--	------------------------

---

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

---

To purge concurrent requests, run the Purge Concurrent Requests and/or Managers report (Requests > Run > Submit Request) from the old APPL\_TOP in either AGE (number of days old) or COUNT (number of old requests to retain) mode.

**Additional Information:** See Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data Program in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

## Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator (conditionally required)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide, Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide, Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step to use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type. This process replicates the FlexBuilder customizations from Release 10.7.

AutoUpgrade scripts update the FlexBuilder rules. The Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process contains the logic from the custom FlexBuilder rules. It contains a function that retrieves the necessary item attribute values (corresponding to raw parameters in FlexBuilder) and calls PL/SQL functions to create the code combination. Apply patch 1570300, then run afffcfb.sql to check for inconsistencies:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

Review affcfb.out for data inconsistencies. You may be able to use the UPDATE statement in affcfb.sql to fix the data. Note the following codes and meanings:

<b>FB: FlexBuilder</b>	<b>KFF: Key Flexfield</b>
Form-F: FNDFBRFP form (FlexBuilder functions) Responsibility: Application Developer Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Function	Form-P: FNDFBMPA form (FlexBuilder parameters) Responsibility: Application Developer Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Parameter
Form-A: FNDFBMAS form (FlexBuilder assignments) Responsibility: Application Developer Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Assign	Form-K: FNDFFMIS form (FlexBuilder segments) Responsibility: System Administrator Navigation path: Application > Flexfield > Key > Segments

---



---

**Warning: The upgrade may fail if it contains data inconsistencies.**

---



---

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

## Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

### Oracle General Ledger Tasks

<b>Checklist</b>	<b>Performed by</b>
1. Review daily rates (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator
2. Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

#### **Step 1: Review daily rates (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

**TUMS Step Key: GL\_REVIEW\_DAILY\_RATES**

---

Perform this step if you maintain daily rates for more than one set of books with the same functional currency in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.

In this release, a single set of daily rates is maintained for each Applications instance. If you have set up multiple sets of books in a single Release 11*i* Applications installation, you must use the same set of daily rates for each set of books.

During the upgrade, AutoUpgrade analyzes the daily rates maintained in each set of books. For each date for which daily rates are maintained, it looks for rate conflicts — instances where the From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type are the same in more than one set of books, but where the daily rate differs.

If there are no conflicts, all daily rates for that combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type from all of the sets of books are transferred into the new daily rate set. If conflicts are found, no rates are transferred. This process is repeated for each combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type for which you maintain daily rates in your sets of books.

---

---

**Attention:** Descriptive flexfields defined for daily rates are not transferred during the upgrade. To retain descriptive flexfields, complete Step 1 of the Oracle General Ledger Tasks in Chapter 5.

---

---

In Step 1 of the Oracle General Ledger Tasks in Chapter 5, the migration script requires you to specify one of two options for handling conflicts.

---

---

**Caution:** Review the daily rates carefully before the upgrade so you can resolve conflicts after the upgrade.

---

---

- Choose daily rates from 1 set of books to use for all sets of books (Option 1)  
For example, assume there are 2 sets of books in one Release 10.7 Applications installation. Each maintains daily rates for converting German marks to U.S. dollars (DM to USD), rate type Corporate. Assume the rates are:

Day	Rate for Set of Books 1	Rate for Set of Books 2
01-DEC-1999	.5757	.576
02-DEC-1999	.5759	.576
03-DEC-1999	.5761	.576
04-DEC-1999	.5763	.576
05-DEC-1999	.5765	.577

You might choose to use the daily rates from Set of Books (SOB) 1 for both sets of books. If so, the installation converts German marks to U.S. dollars using these rates. The SOB 2 rates are not retained.

- Migrate one set of rates to a new rate type (Option 2)

Using the same assumptions as the previous example, you can keep the daily rates from both sets of books by migrating one set of rates to a new rate type.

#### To review daily rates before the upgrade:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report from your new APPL\_TOP for summary information:

##### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
```

##### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
```

2. Review any conflicting rates online in each set of books to identify the nature of the conflict. Alternatively, run the Daily Rates Listing for each set of books and compare the reports manually.

For example, you can instruct the post-upgrade script to migrate all the daily rates maintained in SOB 2 to a new rate type, Corp2. Then, you can instruct the script to migrate all daily rates maintained in SOB 1 to the rate type Corporate.

---

---

**Note:** The script you run to produce the Daily Rates Conflict report *after* the upgrade is different from the script in this step.

---

---

## Step 2: Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>GL_REVISE_DAILY_RATES_LOAD</b>	

Perform this step *only* if you currently use a custom process to load daily rates into Oracle General Ledger (or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger) Release 10.7.

This release contains an open interface table (GL\_DAILY\_RATES\_INTERFACE) for automatically loading daily rates. If you use a custom process to automatically populate the GL\_DAILY\_CONVERSION\_RATES table, modify the process to use the new interface table. After the upgrade, test the customized loading process to ensure the daily conversion rates are being loaded correctly.

---



---

**Warning:** Loading daily rates directly into the GL\_DAILY\_RATES table can corrupt GL data.

---



---

**Additional Information:** See Entering Daily Rates in *Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

## Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update accounting data model (required)	Database Administrator
2. Ensure that transactions are translated (required)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Application Specialist (Receivables)
3. Calculate balances (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
4. Close all accounting periods (required)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Application Specialist (Receivables)

### Step 1: Update accounting data model (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: <b>Database Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>

---

TUMS Step Key: AX\_UPDATE\_ACCOUNTING\_DATAMODEL

---

In prior releases, a single transaction in the primary set of books could contain multiple accounting sequence IDs. However, a transaction in the MRC reporting sets of books could contain only a single accounting sequence ID. Now, you can assign categories to the same event types for both the primary and MRC reporting sets of books, so that transactions in the MRC reporting sets of books can contain multiple accounting sequence IDs.

The upgrade provides complete functionality for this change. However, if you applied patch 1257205 (in patch set 11.0.AX.F, or later) in Release 11.0 to upgrade to the new accounting model, use AutoPatch in pre-install mode to apply patch 1746184 to update the Release 11.0 files.

To verify the status of the data model update, type this command:

```
sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> desc AX_SLE_LINES;
```

If the application\_id and set\_of\_books\_id columns exist and are reported as NOT NULL columns, you have upgraded to the new 11.0 accounting data model.

### Step 2: Ensure that transactions are translated (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)  
/Application Specialist (Receivables)

Reference manual: Oracle Applications  
Global Accounting Engine User's Guide

Users must log off: Yes

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

TUMS Step Key: AX\_ENSURE\_TRANS\_ARE\_TRANS

---

Submit the AX Posting Manager for all applications and sets of books. To check the concurrent log file for the Posting Manager for events that were not translated or that were translated in error, run axxpre01.sql from the new APPL\_TOP. The output is ordered by application, set of books, translation status, event type, and transaction number.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

Review the axxpre01.lst output file and verify that none of the untranslated events need to be translated.

---



---

**Note:** All Payables and Inventory events must be translated prior to the upgrade. All Receivables events with an accounting date less than or equal to the upgrade cutoff date must also be translated. However, Receivables events that are related to future-dated revenue recognition transactions may be translated as of their accounting date (NON\_CASH\_UPDATE event type).

---



---

**Step 3: Calculate balances (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	
TUMS Step Key: AX_CALCULATE_BALANCES	

If you applied the balance calculation update in Release 10.7, omit this step. If you did not, calculate the balances for all accounting lines now.

**Verify balance calculation update:**

Run the following script from the new APPL\_TOP.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

If the script reports an upgraded balance calculation, no further action is required.

**Calculate balances:**

If the script reports that the balance calculation was not upgraded:

1. Submit balance reports.

Submit balance reports for the latest period for each application and for each set of books that uses the Global Accounting Engine.

Report Name	Description
Supplier Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report (use AX Payables Supervisor responsibility)
Customer Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report (use AX Receivables Supervisor responsibility)
Organization Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report (use AX Inventory Supervisor responsibility)

Note that in Release 10.7, balances can run for only one year at a time. All balances for the year are recalculated each time that you run the report. If new transactions were created for a prior year, run a balance calculation for that year and again for each subsequent year.

2. Update accounting lines.

Update the accounting lines after the upgrade. See Step 2 in the Global Accounting Engine Tasks in Chapter 5.

**Step 4: Close all accounting periods (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>Yes</b>	
TUMS Step Key: <b>AX_CLOSE_AP_PERIODS</b>	

In sets of books using the Global Accounting Engine, close all prior periods in Oracle Payables, Receivables, and Inventory, and all current and future periods to prevent transactions during the upgrade. Perform this step from the old APPL\_TOP.

**Additional Information:** See Closing an Accounting Period and Opening and Closing Accounting Periods in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*. See also Maintaining Accounting Periods in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

**Additional Information:** Step 3 of the Oracle Cost Management Tasks in Chapter 3.

## Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update supplier and supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Choose payment method for future-dated payments (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Enable recoverable tax option (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)

### Step 1: Update supplier and supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: **No** User must log off: **No**

TUMS Step Key: **AP\_UPDATE\_SUPPLIER\_AND\_BANK\_SITE**

Complete this step only if you have existing supplier and supplier site remit-to bank information.

AutoUpgrade transfers supplier bank data from PO\_VENDORS and PO\_VENDOR\_SITES\_ALL tables to the AP\_BANK\_BRANCHES, AP\_BANK\_ACCOUNTS\_ALL, and AP\_BANK\_ACCOUNT\_USES\_ALL tables. Identify bank data that must be added to the supplier records so that the upgrade can create corresponding records in the banks tables. Then, update the supplier records with the required data.

#### Review existing supplier information:

Run apmsbrep.sql from the new AP\_TOP in the database user you want to upgrade:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

The script produces a report (apmsbrep.lst) that shows what the upgrade is going to do, including the supplier bank information to be transferred, the bank records to be created, and the records that will not be transferred because required values are missing. Review the report to determine whether to update supplier bank information before it is transferred. If no rows are returned, no further action is necessary.

### Update supplier bank information:

Supplier bank information cannot be transferred without a value for the following required columns: bank, branch, and account number. Update the information for these columns from the application window or by running the b747306a script.

- From the application window

**Character-mode:** use the Bank Accounts region of the Enter Vendor form (\Navigate Vendors Entry).

**GUI:** choose Suppliers > Entry and use the Bank region of the Suppliers window. Then, choose Suppliers > Entry and click the Sites button. Use the Bank Accounts region of the Supplier Sites window to make the updates. After the upgrade, you cannot access bank information from the GUI Suppliers window.

- Using 747306

If you have a large number of supplier records that have no value for bank number and/or branch number, you can request patch 747306. It contains b747306a (provides temporary values so the upgrade can transfer these records) and b747306b (runs after the upgrade to reset the values to null).

### Step 2: Choose payment method for future-dated payments (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: No	User must log off: Yes
TUMS Step Key: AP_CHOOOSE_PAYMENT_METHOD	

Perform only if you use future-dated payments or manual future-dated payments.

Future Dated and Manual Future Dated payment method types have been replaced with the Check, EFT (Electronic), Wire, or Clearing payment types. The apboepre.sql

script populates a temporary table that the upgrade uses to update the future payment method on existing invoices, payments, and payment formats.

Enter the new payment method for the Future Payment method and for the Manual Future Dated payment method at the prompt. Run this script only once from the new APPL\_TOP.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

If you do not run this script, AutoUpgrade automatically replaces Future Dated with EFT (Electronic) and Manual Future Dated with Check.

**Step 3: Enable recoverable tax option (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
---------------------------------------	--

---

Reference manual: No	User must log off: Yes
----------------------	------------------------

---

If you have NO recoverable tax in ANY operating unit, omit this step.

In order to set up recoverable taxes in Step 3 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Category 6, set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials flag to Y now. This option affects the way tax lines are flagged as recoverable or nonrecoverable, the way accounting entries are created during the upgrade, and the way data is populated in Recovery Rate.

Perform this task for any operating unit where tax has been considered recoverable (for example, VAT or GST) in the past, or will be in the future.

**Add recoverable tax flag:**

To add the NON\_RECOVERABLE\_TAX\_FLAG column to the FINANCIALS\_SYSTEM\_PARAMS\_ALL table, run apaltfsp.sql from the new APPL\_TOP. Run this script only once.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
```

**Enable recoverable tax option:**

Choose the appropriate script to set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes. When you set up recoverable taxes in Step 3 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Category 6, the tax codes are updated to be 100% recoverable and the TAX\_RECOVERABLE\_FLAG for each of the existing tax lines is set to Y (100% recoverable).

---

---

**Warning: Set the Enable Recoverable Tax option to Y for all operating units that require recoverable tax. If you do not, accounting entries will be created incorrectly.**

---

---

For single operating units that use recoverable tax, or multiple operating units that ALL use recoverable tax, run the following script *once* to update all operating units:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

For multiple operating units with different tax recoverability structures, run the following script for *each* operating unit that uses recoverable tax:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

## Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Record truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)	All
2. Move government uniform invoice information for each organization (required)	Taiwan
3. Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)	Taiwan
4. Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)	Taiwan
5. Record uniform numbers for your company (recommended)	Taiwan
6. Record Canadian tax setup (conditionally required)	Canada
7. Print tax rebate and rule listings (recommended)	Canada

### Step 1: Record truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)

Perform for this country: **All**      Perform if upgrading from: **Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**      Users must log off: **No**

Reference manual: **No**      Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

TUMS Step Key: **JA\_RECORD\_TRUNCATED\_LOOKUPS**

During the upgrade, lookup codes longer than 30 bytes are truncated and duplicate lookup code meanings are renamed. No seeded codes are affected. If customized modules reference these lookup codes or lookup code meanings, you may need to modify the migrated lookups or the customized modules. See Step 1 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Category 4.

Run this script from the new APPL\_TOP to identify the affected lookup codes and lookup code meanings:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jam1.smck.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jamlsnck.sql
```

---



---

**Note:** The upgrade does not migrate obsolete lookups. Refer to the *Product Update Notes* for Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific.

---



---

## Step 2: Move government uniform invoice information for each organization (required)

Perform for this country: <b>Taiwan</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_MOVE_GOVT_INVOICE_INFO</b>	

All previous Oracle Financials for Taiwan windows are now obsolete. During the upgrade, export certificate and other government uniform invoice information, except miscellaneous invoices, is moved to either globalization flexfields or Oracle Receivables windows. To record the existing government uniform invoice information, run `jatwupg1.sql`, and review the output (`<Org ID>jatwupg1.lst`).

### To record existing government uniform invoice information:

Run `jatwupg1.sql` by typing:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

### To move government uniform invoice information:

All government uniform invoice attributes are assigned to transactions. Use `jatwupg2.sql` to migrate invoice format data.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

Review output in <Org ID>jatwupg2.log. The script performs the following actions:

- Updates only complete transactions in closed periods. If there are incomplete transactions in a current open period after the upgrade, enter a transaction source in the Transaction window.
- Moves government uniform invoice information defined in the Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts window to the Transactions window and its globalization flexfield. The following table shows the field mapping:

10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts)	Release 11 / Field Name (Transactions)
Invoice Format	Invoice Format (hidden segment in globalization flexfield)
Uniform Invoice Word + Uniform Invoices/Sales No	Legacy Uniform Invoice (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Void	Status (base product field in the More alternate name region)
Wine/Cigarette	Wine/Cigarette (segment in the globalization flexfield)

**Note:** Because the transaction date is used as the government uniform invoice date, the uniform invoice date is not migrated.

- Moves export certificate information that was entered in the Define Zero-rate Uniform Invoices in Release 10.7 or 11.0 to the Transactions window globalization flexfield. The following table shows the field mapping:

Release 10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Zero-Rate Uniform Invoices)	Release 11 / Field Name (Transactions)
Number	Export Certificate Number (segment in globalization flexfield)
Name	Export Name (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Method	Export Method (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Date	Export Date (segment in the globalization flexfield)

### Step 3: Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Taiwan**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

---

**Performed by: System Administrator****Users must log off: No**

---

**Reference manual: No****Requires Concurrent Manager: No**

---

**TUMS Step Key: JA\_MOVE\_CUSTOMER\_UNIFORM\_NUM**

---

In Release 10.7 and 11.0, customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the Tax Registration Number field in the Customers window. In 11*i*, the Customers window has both a Taxpayer ID and a Tax Registration Number field. Use `jatwupg4.sql` to move the customer uniform number to the Taxpayer ID field, and `jatwupg3.sql` to record existing customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade.

**To record existing customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:**

Run `jatwupg3.sql` by typing:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

Review the output in `jatwupg3.lst` and keep the file for your records.

**To move customer uniform numbers:**

Run this script to move customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) in the Tax Registration Number field to the Taxpayer ID field:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

Review the `jatwupg4.log` file after the script finishes.

The `jatwupg4.sql` script overwrites the Taxpayer ID field in the Release 11*i* Customers window with data from the Release 10.7 or 11 Tax Registration Number field and makes the Tax Registration Number field blank.

---



---

**Warning:** *Do not* run this script if you want to keep the existing data in the Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. *Do not* run this script if multiple countries share the database, as it updates all customer taxpayer ID information regardless of whether the information is entered in a Taiwanese responsibility.

---



---

#### **Step 4: Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)**

Perform for this country: <b>Taiwan</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_MOVE_SUPPLIER_UNIFORM_NUM</b>	

Previously, supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the globalization flexfield of the Suppliers window. In Release 11*i*, the Suppliers window contains both Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. Record existing supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade, and move the supplier uniform numbers from the Suppliers window globalization flexfield to the Suppliers window Taxpayer ID field.

#### **To record existing supplier uniform numbers:**

Run `jatwupg5.sql` as follows:

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

Review output in `jatwupg5.lst` and keep the file for your records.

#### **To move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:**

Use the `jatwupg6.sql` script to transfer the supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer ID) from the Uniform Number globalization flexfield segment to the Taxpayer ID field of the Suppliers window. The script does not update the Taxpayer ID field unless it is *blank*, so make sure there is no data in this field.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

**Step 5: Record uniform numbers for your company (recommended)**

Perform for this country: <b>Taiwan</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Taiwan</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_RECORD_COMPANY_UNIFORM_NUM</b>	

In previous releases, uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were defined in the System Options window globalization flexfield. In Release 11*i*, they are defined in the Locations window (Human Resources). Run the following script to record these numbers so that you can re-enter them in Step 1 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Category 6. The <SID> is the value of the \$ORACLE\_SID or \$TWO\_TASK (UNIX) or ORACLE\_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @JA_TOP/admin/sql/jatwupg7.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%JA_TOP%\admin\sql\jatwupg7.sql
```

Review the output in jatwupg7.lst and keep the file to use after the upgrade. It is located in the current directory.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Financials for Taiwan User's Guide*.

**Step 6: Record Canadian tax setup (conditionally required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Canada</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) update applied, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>

---

**TUMS Step Key: JA\_RECORD\_CANADIAN\_TAX\_SETUP**


---

Input Tax Groups (ITG) replaces Release 10.7/11 Multiple Tax Distributions (MTD) functionality. Run `jacaupgr.sql` to record tax setup information. Review `jacaupgr.lst` (in the current working directory) and use information to set up Input Tax Groups.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See Upgrading to 11i in the *Oracle Financials for Canada User's Guide*.

---

**Step 7: Print tax rebate and rule listings (recommended)**


---

Perform for this country: <b>Canada</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) update applied, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
<b>TUMS Step Key: JA_PRINT_TAX_REBATE</b>	

---

To help define recovery rules, run `jacarmpr.sql` to generate `jacarmpr.lst`, which displays tax rebate and recovery rules.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacarmpr.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacarmpr.sql
```

## Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update Swedish EFT payment format information (required)	Sweden
2. Pay Danish EFT invoices (conditionally required)	Denmark

### Step 1: Update Swedish EFT payment format information (required)

Perform for this country: **Sweden**

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off: **Yes**

Reference manual: **1658488 readme file**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

TUMS Step Key: **JE\_UPDATE\_SWEDISH\_EFT\_PAYMENTS**

If you have not done so already, apply patch 1658488. It updates payment format information and stores in new fields the information for bank accounts that are assigned to suppliers paid with Swedish payment formats and Swedish foreign payment formats.

If the version numbers of the formatting files are greater than, or equal to, those listed in the following table, *do not* apply the update.

Formatting File	Version Number
JESEPBAL.sql	110.18
JESEPBSL.sql	110.11
JESEPBUT.sql	110.7
JESEPPOL.sql	110.15
JESEPPOU.sql	110.19

**Warning:** Follow the instructions in the readme file carefully. *Do not perform the manual steps if you have previously applied the update* — if you do, your data will be corrupted.

**Step 2: Pay Danish EFT invoices (conditionally required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Denmark</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Product Manager (Financials for Denmark)</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide</b>	
TUMS Step Key: <b>JE_PAY_DANISH_EFT_INVOICES</b>	

Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) has been replaced with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). If you have invoices that must to be paid with EFT rather than EDI, pay them now. After the upgrade, only EDI is available.

**Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks**

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure (required)	Brazil
2. Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS (required)	Brazil

**Step 1: Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure (required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Brazil</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator/Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JL_UPGRADE_BRAZILIAN_SUBLEDGERS</b>	

Run jlbrsusl.sql to identify fixes necessary for your system. View the results online or in jlbrsusl.lst. The file is in the current directory, where <SID> is the value of \$ORACLE\_SID or \$TWO\_TASK (UNIX) or ORACLE\_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @JL_TOP/admin/sql/jlbrsusl.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%JL_TOP%\admin\sql\jlbrsusl.sql
```

**Step 2: Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL\_BR\_LOOKUPS (required)**Perform for this country: **Brazil**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist**Users must log off: **No**TUMS Step Key: **JL\_BR\_LOOKUPS\_DUPLICATES**

The upgrade moves the data in JL\_BR\_LOOKUPS to the FND\_LOOKUPS table. Row descriptions in the FND\_LOOKUPS table must be unique up to the first 30 characters. During the upgrade, lookups are transferred and all descriptions are truncated. Run jmlsmck.sql to check for rows that are not unique:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jmlsmck.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jmlsmck.sql
```

To correct duplicate descriptions in the JL\_BR\_LOOKUPS table, from the Brazilian General Information responsibility, navigate to General > Setup > QuickCodes.

## Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

## Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Correct the week ending date and month ending date for MLS (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
4. Correct credit memo invoice dates (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Checklist	Performed by
5. Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
6. Correct billing hold data on reversing items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
7. Correct billable flag data for reversing items (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
8. Run data fix scripts (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

### Step 1: Correct the week ending date and month ending date for MLS (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**      Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **No**      Users must log off: **Yes**

You may receive a message while using the Copy Actuals function in the budget form that indicates the data contains an invalid month (ORA-01843). It occurs most often in an MLS environment because the WEEK\_ENDING\_DATE and MONTH\_ENDING\_DATE columns in the PA\_TXN\_ACCUM table are VARCHAR2 datatypes, but they are used to store dates. In an MLS environment, the date stored in these columns may not be in the language used by the database instance as determined by NLS\_DATE\_LANGUAGE or NLS\_LANGUAGE (if the NLS\_DATE\_LANGUAGE parameter is NULL).

To find the exceptions, run patxnerr.sql from the new APPL\_TOP. It creates a temporary table PA\_TXN\_ACCUM\_ERR to store the records that are in error.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Then, run patxnsq.sql.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsq.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

The script produces `txn_fix.lst`, which is stored in the current working directory. The report has two sections:

Section 1 begins with this text: "The following records have been updated in PA\_TXN\_ACCUM with the New\_Week\_Ending\_Date and New\_Month\_Ending\_Date." This section lists the records with the old and new values for the `week_ending_date` and `month_ending_date` columns.

Section 2 begins with the line "Please update the `week_ending_date` and `month_ending_date` for the following records in PA\_TXN\_ACCUM." This section lists the records for which the `WEEK_ENDING_DATE` and `MONTH_ENDING_DATE` columns could not be updated.

Update manually any records listed in Section 2. The month must be in the language of the database server instance. After making the corrections, run `patxnsql.sql` again to ensure that corrections have been made. Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

**Step 2: Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)

---

Reference manual: No

Users must log off: Yes

---

TUMS Step Key: PA\_CORRECT\_EXCESS\_REVENUE

---

Perform this step only if you have Project Billing installed.

Run `pa620118.sql` to produce a list (`pa620118.lst`) of the project/tasks whose revenue has exceeded the hard limit funding amount. This script may take a long time to run. From the new `APPL_TOP`:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

The pa620118.lst report lists the project and task number, agreement number, and the amount by which revenue has exceeded the funding limit. To correct the data, create a write-off revenue event for each excess revenue amount listed in the report.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

### **Step 3: Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Projects)</b>
---------------------------------------	--

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
---	--------------------------------

---

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_CORRECT\_REVENUE\_NEG\_EXPENDITURE**

---

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items accruing overstated revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Oracle Projects now generates the correct revenue amount. Run pa661335.sql from the new APPL\_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

At the prompt, enter Start Project Number and End Project Number to reduce processing time. The script produces pa661335.lst, which lists the project and task number, expenditure type, quantity, and accrued revenue for all expenditure items where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, from the old APPL\_TOP, enter a Recalculate Revenue adjustment for each of the expenditure items listed in the report.

1. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry and select Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Expenditure Items window.
2. Query for the expenditure items you want to correct.
3. Choose Recalc Revenue from the Special menu.
4. Repeat this procedure for each of the listed expenditure items.

Enter Recalculate Revenue adjustments and run the Generate Draft Revenue process (Submit Request > Requests > Run) for each affected project.

**Additional Information:** See Expenditure Adjustments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

#### **Step 4: Correct credit memo invoice dates (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Users must log off: **Yes**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_CREDIT\_MEMO\_INVOICE**

---

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

In prior releases, Projects allowed the release of a credit memo with an AR invoice date earlier than the AR invoice date of the original invoice. Oracle Receivables rejects such credit memos during the AutoInvoice Process. Run pa652811.sql from the new APPL\_TOP to report existing credit memos with an AR invoice date earlier than the original AR invoice date.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces pa652811.lst, which lists the project number, credit invoice number, original invoice number, credit memo date, and the Receivables invoice number for all credit memos with an invoice date earlier than the original invoice date. To correct the data, update the AR Invoice Date for each credit memo listed. Perform the steps from the old APPL\_TOP:

1. Navigate to the Find Invoice window (choose Billing > Invoice Review).
2. Query for the credit memo you want to correct.

3. Change the AR Invoice Date to a date on (or after) the date of the original invoice. Make this change in the Invoice Summary window or by opening the credit invoice.
4. Repeat these steps for each credit memo.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

### **Step 5: Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Projects)</b>
--	--

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
---	--------------------------------

---

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_BILL\_AMOUNT\_DATA\_DISTRIBUTIONS**

---

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

In prior releases, billing amounts were not stored in revenue distribution lines on “Accrue as work Occurs - Bill as work Occurs” projects. This resulted in the Oracle error “ORA-1400: cannot INSERT null value” during the Generate Draft Invoices process. Run `pardlrpt.sql` from the new `APPL_TOP` to report expenditure items that contain this error.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. It produces `pardlrpt.lst`, which lists the project name, task number, expenditure item ID, expenditure type, quantity, and amount for all expenditure items whose billing amounts should have been stored in the revenue distribution lines. If no exceptional expenditure items are reported, no further action is needed. Correct the data from the old `APPL_TOP` as follows:

1. Recalculate revenue

Perform Recalculate Revenue adjustments on the listed expenditure items. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry, and enter criteria to find the expenditure items you want to adjust.

After you adjust the expenditure items, run the Generate Draft Revenue process, from the Submit Request window (Requests > Run), for each affected project.

**2. Re-run the Exception report**

Run pardlrpt.sql again. If any expenditure items are reported, go back to the previous step. Repeat these two steps until no expenditure items are listed.

**3. Create temporary table**

Run pacrttab.sql to create temporary table pa\_bug\_644714. It stores the following audit information about the updated revenue distribution lines:

Audit Information	Audit Information
expenditure_item_id	line_num
creation_date	new_bill_amount
old_draft_inv_num	old_draft_inv_item_line_num

From the new APPL\_TOP:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
```

**4. Correct the data**

Run pardlupd.sql from the new APPL\_TOP. It prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter these values to run this script for a range of projects. *Do not omit any projects.*

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See Expenditure Adjustments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

### **Step 6: Correct billing hold data on reversing items (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes
TUMS Step Key: PA_BILLING_HOLDS_ON_REVERSING	

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to manual reversals of expenditure items whose Bill Hold flag was set to Yes. Prior to this upgrade, these items were created with the Bill Hold flag set to No rather than Yes, and therefore the reversals could be invoiced. Run `painv.sql` from the new `APPL_TOP` to report expenditure items with this error.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and an End Project Number. Enter these values to run this script for a range of projects. *Do not omit any projects.*

The script produces `painv.lst`, which has two sections:

- List of Projects Against Released Invoices. Lists project/top task bill amounts that are incorrectly invoiced, where the incorrect invoices are already released.
- List of Projects Against Unreleased Invoices. Lists projects against which incorrect invoices exist, where the invoices are not yet released.

To correct the released invoices, create top task-level events in the amounts shown in the report for the specified project/tasks. From the old `APPL_TOP`:

1. Choose Billing > Events select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window. Query for the project that you want to correct.

2. Choose New to display the Event Details window.
3. Enter the Task Number of the top task listed in the report.
4. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-On.
5. In the Bill Amount field, enter the amount listed in painv.lst for the project and task.
6. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields. Save your work.
7. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the report.

After you create the events, run the Generate Draft Invoices process for the affected projects.

To correct the unreleased invoices, run the datafix script pa858651.sql. This script sets the “bill hold” flag for the reversed expenditure items to Yes and regenerates the invoices for the projects listed. Run the script from the new APPL\_TOP.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See Events in *Oracle Projects User’s Guide*.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

**Step 7: Correct billable flag data for reversing items (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Projects)</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>

---

This step pertains to expenditure items that were adjusted from billable to non-billable or vice versa. Prior to this upgrade, when these expenditure items were reversed, the reversing expenditure items were created with the Billable flag set to the original value, rather than the adjusted value.

To correct the flag settings, run pacstrev.sql. This script reports projects that have associated expenditure items in error and indicates which processes you need to

run after you run the datafix script (pa882573.sql). Be sure that you run pacstrev.sql before you run pa882573.sql, so you know which processes to run after you correct the data.

**To run the reporting script:**

Type the following commands from the new APPL\_TOP:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

The script produces pacstrev.lst, which contains two sections:

- Cost Distribution needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the cost distribution processes after you run the datafix script.
- Revenue Distribution/Asset Accumulation needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the Generate Draft Revenue process or the Generate Asset Lines process after you run the datafix script.

The report lists each project and the associated project type.

- If the project type indicates that the project is a contract project, run the Generate Draft Revenue process for the project after you correct the data.
- If the project type indicates that the project is a capital project, run the Generate Asset Lines process for the project after you correct the data.

To correct the data, run the datafix script pa882573.sql. Enter starting and ending project numbers when the script prompts for these values.

This script corrects the Billable flag for the reversed expenditure items that are in error, and marks the items for cost recalculation (sets the COST\_DISTRIBUTED\_FLAG to N). The script also sets the REVENUE\_DISTRIBUTED\_FLAG to No if either of the following conditions is true:

- The expenditure item is charged to a capital project.
- The expenditure item is charged to a contract project with a revenue accrual method or invoicing method of Work, AND the original item was non-billable

and has not been revenue distributed, AND the billable reversing item has been revenue distributed.

**To run the datafix script:**

From the new APPL\_TOP:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

After you run this script, run the required cost distribution, revenue distribution, and asset line generation processes according to the exception report (pacstrev.lst). Use the Submit Request window (Requests > Run).

For the projects that require cost distribution and/or revenue distribution processes, run the Update Project Summary Amounts process. Use the Project Status Inquiry windows to verify the corrected amounts.

---

---

**Note:** The new billable and non-billable summary amounts generated after this datafix are displayed in the earliest open period. This period may be different from the period in which the original expenditure item was reversed.

---

---

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

**Step 8: Run data fix scripts (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle** User must log off: **No**  
**Projects Reference Manual**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_RUN\_DATA\_FIX\_SCRIPT**

---

Run the data fix scripts to correct inconsistencies in the revenue amount attributes for Cost Budgets and cost amount attributes for Revenue Budgets. These scripts also correct resource-related data that was not properly ungraded.

Run the following script to fix revenue amounts and cost amounts:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418823.sql \
  <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418823.sql \
  <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Run the following script to correct resource data from previous upgrades:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418828.sql \
  <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418828.sql \
  <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

## Order Management

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

## Oracle Inventory Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Purge unwanted transaction history - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory

### Step 1: Purge unwanted transaction history - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Inventory)

Reference manual: No

Users must log off: No

To purge unwanted transaction data, run the following script from the new APPL\_TOP.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

The script requires three arguments:

Argument	Description
purge cutoff date	Only transactions before this date are purged. The date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. For example, 1992-01-29.
organization code	Transactions for this organization are purged. If you do not enter a code, the script deletes transaction history for <i>all</i> organizations.
rows per commit	Depending on the size of rollback segments, you can vary the number of rows that are deleted per commit. The larger this number, the faster the purge, and the larger the rollback segment required.

---



---

**Warning:** Purged transactions do not appear on the Accrual Reconciliation report.

---



---



---



---

**Note:** Upgrading large amounts of transaction history data can take a long time

---



---

## Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run Order Import program (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
2. Run Order Entry Interface programs (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
3. Close eligible orders (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
4. Run AutoCreate Installed Base program for Services (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)

Checklist	Performed by
5. Make sure orders are in a supported status (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
6. Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
7. Run the Shipping Interface programs (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
8. Review Item Validation Org settings (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
9. Validate inventory organization data (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
10. Review cycles that may not be upgraded (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
11. Selectively upgrade active transactions (recommended)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)

---

**Note:** Run the Order Entry Purge program to remove all old data. (This program does not affect Order Management queries.) *Do not purge any Order Entry tables after the upgrade.* Order Management looks at Order Entry for information on upgraded orders/lines. *Make sure there is no unprocessed data in RMA Interface tables.*

---

### Step 1: Run Order Import program (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

The Order Import Interface tables must be empty before the Order Management upgrade. Select Orders, Returns > Import Orders from the menu.

### Step 2: Run Order Entry Interface programs (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

All Order Entry interface tables must be empty before you upgrade to Order Management. To prepare the tables, run the following programs *in the order listed*:

- RMA Interface (Orders, Returns > Returns > RMA Interface)
- Receivables Interface (Orders, Returns > Receivables Interface)

- Inventory Interface (Shipping > Interfaces). Enter Inventory interface in the Name field.

**Additional Information:** *Oracle Order Entry Reference Manual, Release 10 (Vol. 1, pp. 6-20 to 6-23); Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Release 11 User's Guide, (Vol. 2, pp. 7-11 to 7-14)*

- Demand Interface (Orders, Returns > Schedule > Place Demand via SRS)
- Service Interface (Orders, Returns > Service Interface)

If you are running Pick Slip Shipping and are prompted to enter a warehouse, do not do so. Have the system administrator change the mandatory parameter to an optional one. From the System Administration Responsibility, choose Concurrent > Programs > Define. Query the program Inventory Interface (OEVINV) and click Parameters. Uncheck the Required check box and save the change.

### **Step 3: Close eligible orders (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

To speed the upgrade, close all orders that are eligible for closing (even though the Close Eligible status is supported by the Order Management upgrade). Select Orders, Returns > Close Orders from the menu.

### **Step 4: Run AutoCreate Installed Base program for Services (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

To ensure that all data has been transferred out of the Order Entry Service Details Interface tables, change the responsibility to Service. Then, select Installed Base > AutoCreate Installed Base and run AutoCreate Install Base.

### **Step 5: Make sure orders are in a supported status (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

Make sure Orders Headers and Order Lines are in a status that is supported by Order Management. Workflow history is not created for closed lines or orders.

<b>Seeded Action</b>	<b>Allowed Status (other than NULL and Not Applicable)</b>	<b>Status Not Allowed</b>	<b>Suggest Action</b>
<b>The following information applies to Orders:</b>			
Booking	All	None	None
Cancel Orders	11- Complete	18 - Eligible	*
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible	None	None
<b>The following information applies to Order Lines:</b>			
Pick Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Back Order Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Ship Confirm	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 7 - Back-ordered Completed, 22 - Back-ordered Partial	18 - Eligible	Ship Confirm the Line
Receivables Interface	5 - Partial, 9 - Interfaced to AR, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible	None	None
Inventory Interface	5 - Partially Interfaced, 14 - Interfaced	13 - Interface Error	Fix errors and run Interface program
Inventory Interface	None	18 - Eligible	Run Inventory Interface program
Cancel Line	5 - Partial, 11- Complete	18 - Eligible	*
Service Interface	14 - Interfaced	18 - Eligible	Run the Service Interface program
Purchase Release	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Manufacturing Release	18 - Eligible	4 - Released	Run the Auto-create config program
Manufacturing Release	19 - Work Order Completed	20 - WO partially completed	Complete work order
Manufacturing Release	None	21 - WO created	Complete work order
Manufacturing Release	None	23 - Configuration created	Run Auto-create Work Order program
Demand Interface	14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible	None	None
RMA Interface	14 - Interfaced, 16 - Partially Accepted, 17 - Completely Accepted, 18 - Eligible	None	None

\* Order Entry DOES NOT support defining cycles that include Cancel Action. It DOES NOT provide a program or a form to automatically process orders or lines that are eligible for the Cancel Action. Use the Cancel Orders form to manually cancel orders or lines that are eligible for the Cancel Action.

Run `ontexc07.sql` to get a list (`ontexc07.lst`) of Order Entry Orders and Order Lines that are in cycle states that are not supported. These orders are not upgraded.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

**Step 6: Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

**For 10.7 character mode:**

Back order or ship confirm all open pick slips and picking batches. Navigate > Shipping > Confirm.

**For 10.7 SmartClient and NCA:**

For pick slip-based Shipping customers, back order or ship confirm all open pick slips and picking batches. Select Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Pick Slip.

For delivery-based Shipping customers, back order or ship confirm all open deliveries and departures. Select Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Ship Confirm Deliveries.

**For 11.0:**

Back order or ship confirm all open deliveries and departures. Select Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Ship Confirm Deliveries.

**Step 7: Run the Shipping Interface programs (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

All Order Entry data must be processed from the interface tables before you upgrade. Run the Shipping Interface programs listed in this section in the order listed. Use the appropriate menu path to access each program.

**For 10.7 character mode:**

Complete these steps for the following Shipping Interface programs in this order listed: Update Shipping Information, Inventory Interface, Receivables Interface. As you complete each set of steps, enter the appropriate program name in the Report Name field.

1. Choose Navigate > Run (or use quickpick)
2. In the Type field, enter *report*, and in the Report Name field, enter the *<Shipping Interface Program name>* (or use quickpick).
3. Tab through the report parameters, and save your work.

**For 10.7 SmartClient and NCA and 11.0:**

Run the following Shipping Interface programs in the order listed. Use the appropriate menu path to access each program.

Program Name	Menu Path
Delivery-based Ship Confirm Open Interface	Shipping > Interfaces > (Enter <i>Delivery-based Ship Confirm Open Interface</i> in the Name field.)
Update Shipping	Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Update Shipping
Inventory Interface	Shipping > Interfaces > (Enter <i>Inventory Interface</i> in the Name field)
Receivables Interface	Shipping > Interfaces > (Enter <i>Receivables Interface</i> in the Name field)

---

**Note:** If the profile option OE:Immediate Inventory Update is set to Yes, the Delivery-based Ship Confirm Open Interface program may close some deliveries and departures by running the Update Shipping and Inventory Interface concurrent processes automatically. However, you should still run these concurrent processes manually as instructed in this step to ensure that all interface records are processed.

---

**Step 8: Review Item Validation Org settings (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0    Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**    Users must log off: **No**

When more than one responsibility is attached to an organization (Operating Unit), all those responsibilities must have the same item validation org settings. Run `ontexc05.sql` to produce a listing (`ontexc05.lst`) of the item validation org settings. Use this list to determine which settings need to be changed. If the valid item validation org is set at the user level, these values will not be upgraded.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*.

**Step 9: Validate inventory organization data (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

---

Reference manual: **SQL\*Plus User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

The `wshpre00.sql` script validates the following data for *inventory* organizations:

- All organizations in shipping parameters are defined and valid. They must also have an enabled subinventory.
- All organizations are assigned to locations.

To run this script, type the following:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

Review `wshpre00.lst`. Purge shipping parameters records without valid organizations. Have the application specialist assign a quantity-tracked subinventory to any record that does not have at least one. In addition, define and

assign an internal (HR) location for each inventory organization defined in your system that does not already have one.

### **Step 10: Review cycles that may not be upgraded (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

---

Order Entry cycles referenced by open orders are upgraded to workflow processes during the upgrade. Some cycles may not be upgraded successfully because:

- the cycle definition is corrupt
- the cycle definition is not supported in Order Entry
- the cycle definition is extremely complex
- there is no exact functional equivalent in Order Management

Run `ontexc08.sql` to create `ontexc08.lst`, which lists cycles that cannot be upgraded and suggested actions. If a cycle is not upgraded to Workflow, open orders referencing that cycle *are not* upgraded.

**Additional Information:** See *OracleMetaLink* Document 150511.1.

To run `ontexc08.sql`:

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

### **Step 11: Selectively upgrade active transactions (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

---

Reference manual: **No** Users must log off: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **ONT\_BIFURCATION**

---

You can select some active transactions for upgrade and defer the upgrade of the remaining transactions to a future date. This is a two-phase process. If you want to

take advantage of this feature, perform Phase I now. Refer to *Order Management Upgrade Instructions* (OracleMetaLink Document 121200.1).

## Procurement

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Procurement products you have installed.

### Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Clear open interface tables (required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

#### **Step 1: Clear open interface tables (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator</b>
--	---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>
-----------------------------

User must log off: <b>No</b>
------------------------------

Requires concurrent manager: <b>Yes</b>
---

Clear any unprocessed records in the Requisitions Open Interface, Purchasing Documents Open Interface, and Receiving Open Interface tables by importing the data into Purchasing. First, check to see whether data exists in the open interface tables. Then, clear the affected tables as necessary.

#### **Determine whether data exists in the open interface tables:**

1. Log in to SQL\*Plus.

##### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<script name>
```

##### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<script name>
```

2. Run each of the following scripts:
  - Requisitions Open Interface (pocntreq.sql)

- Purchasing Documents Open Interface (pocntpoh.sql)
- Receiving Open Interface (pocntrcv.sql)

If a script returns a number greater than 0, then you have data in that open interface. The following instructions tell you how to clear the data. If the script returns 0, no action is necessary.

**Clear rows in the Requisitions Open Interface tables:**

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import program. To make sure you process all data, you can leave the Import Source and Import Batch Identification fields blank.
2. Choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import Exceptions report. Use this report to see if errors occurred while running Requisition Import. Correct errors and re-run Requisition Import until no more errors occur.

**Additional Information:** See Requisition Import Process and Requisition Import Exceptions Report in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i*.

**Clear rows in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables:**

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program. Choose Reports > Run again and submit the Purchasing Interface Errors Report.
2. Review the Purchasing Interface Errors report and correct any errors. Re-run the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program until no more errors occur. If you are upgrading from Release 11.0.3, you can submit the Purge Purchasing Open Interface Processed Data program to remove all processed data in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables. Note that this program does not remove data that is pending.

**Additional Information:** See Purchasing Documents Open Interface and Purchasing Interface Errors Report in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*.

**Clear rows in the Receiving Open Interface tables:**

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Receiving Transaction Processor. Then, submit the Receiving Interface Errors report.

2. Review the Receiving Interface Errors report and correct any errors. Re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.
3. If you have Advance Shipment Notices with billing information (ASBNs) in the Receiving Open Interface, choose Reports > Run in the Purchasing responsibility to submit the Purchasing Interface Errors report.

In the Parameters window, select Receiving Open Interface in the Source Program field. Use this report to see what errors occurred. Correct any errors and re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.

**Additional Information:** See Receiving Transaction Processor and Receiving Interface Errors Report and Purchasing Interface Errors Report in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*.

---

**Note:** If you cannot fix an error, examine the affected data. If it is old or obsolete, you can ignore the error and continue upgrading.

---

## Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

### Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop obsolete seed data (required)	Application Specialist

#### Step 1: Drop obsolete seed data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 12, 3.1, 3.3

Performed by: **Application Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**

User must log off this application: **No**

TUMS Step Key: **IGI\_REMOVE\_OLD\_SEED\_DATA**

To delete obsolete seed data, run the following script from the new APPL\_TOP:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igipreu.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igipreu.sql
```



---

## Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade

This chapter describes Category 3 steps — once you begin these tasks, you cannot use Oracle Applications until after you have successfully run AutoUpgrade and completed the Category 4 steps.

- Oracle Alert Tasks on page 3-2
- Oracle Common Modules Tasks on page 3-3
- Oracle Workflow Tasks on page 3-4
- Oracle Payables Tasks on page 3-5
- Oracle Receivables Tasks on page 3-9
- Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks on page 3-12
- Oracle Projects Tasks on page 3-13
- Oracle Cost Management Tasks on page 3-17
- Oracle Inventory Tasks on page 3-19
- Oracle Order Management Tasks on page 3-21
- Oracle Purchasing Tasks on page 3-22
- Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks on page 3-23
- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks on page 3-25
- Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks on page 3-26
- Oracle Service Tasks on page 3-26
- System Administration Tasks on page 3-27
- Database Upgrade Tasks on page 3-28

## Applications Technology

Complete this portion of the upgrade before you perform the product-specific steps.

### Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

#### **Step 1: Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **Yes**

To drop all event alert database triggers in custom schemas, run `alrdtrig.sql` from the new `APPL_TOP`. Re-create the triggers in Step 2 of the Oracle Alert Tasks in Chapter 6.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

The script displays the following message and then exits SQL\*Plus:

```
"Rerun alrdtrig.sql, which is located in the preupg subdirectory of the admin
directory under APPL_TOP, for each custom schema. If alrdtrig.sql has been run
for all custom schemas, then open each [schema].sql (created by this script),
which can be found in the current directory, and manually delete the drop
trigger statements which do not belong. Then run the following statement for
each schema: sqlplus apps_username/password @[schema].sql"
```

Review the resulting `[schema].sql` files in the current directory and delete any drop trigger statements that do not belong. Log in to SQL\*Plus and run each `[schema].sql` file to drop the triggers.

## Oracle Common Modules Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Fix invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	Application Specialist

### Step 1: Fix invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0**      Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**      Users must log off: **No**

In this step, you first check for invalid AK data, then you fix the data.

#### For a non-Global Demo database (10.7 and Production 16.1 or higher):

Run the following script from the new APPL\_TOP:

##### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

##### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

Review the output (akchkp16.rpt) for invalid data. If the report indicates a problem, run scripts akfxmrp1.sql and akfxmrp2.sql (problems and scripts are described in *OracleMetaLink* Document 184261.1). Continue to run the scripts (from the old APPL\_TOP) and make corrections until there is no invalid data.

#### For a Release 11.0 database:

Run the following script from the new APPL\_TOP:

##### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

##### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

Check the output (akchkr11.rpt) for invalid data. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to make corrections. Continue to run the script (from the old APPL\_TOP) and make corrections until there is no invalid data.

## Oracle Workflow Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update protection and customization levels of seeded item types (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)

### Step 1: Update protection and customization levels of seeded item types (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)

Reference manual: Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide; Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide

Users must log off: Yes

If you customized seeded item types in prior versions of Oracle Workflow, the new seed data may not load properly when you use the Workflow Definitions Loader. For every item type currently seeded in the database, choose one of these actions:

Action	Result
Do nothing.	Preserves the existing protection and customization levels of seeded objects and guarantees that any customizations made to the seed data (and preserved) are not overwritten.
Run wfprotrst.sql for selected seeded item types to reset the protection and customization levels.	Resets the protection and customization level for the selected item type, guaranteeing that the upgrade loads. Prior customizations to the seeded item type are lost, but any new data added to the item type is preserved. To run the script, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:  <b>UNIX:</b>  \$ cd \$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg \$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \ @wfprotrst <item_type>  <b>Windows:</b>  C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \ @wfprotrst <item_type>

Action	Result
Run wfrmitt.sql for selected seed item types.	<p>Completely deletes the item type and any associated customizations from the database, so that the corresponding seed item type looks like a new installation. Consider this option only if you have never used the item type in a production environment. Type the following from the new APPL_TOP:</p> <p><b>UNIX:</b></p> <pre>\$ cd \$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg \$ sqlplus &lt;APPS username&gt;/&lt;APPS password&gt; @wfrmitt</pre> <p><b>Windows:</b></p> <pre>C:\&gt; cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg C:\&gt; sqlplus &lt;APPS username&gt;/&lt;APPS password&gt; @wfrmitt</pre>

**Additional Information:** See Workflow Administration Scripts, Oracle Workflow Access Protection, and Using the Workflow Definitions Loader sections in *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*.

To determine item types, type the following at any prompt:

```
sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> select ITEM_TYPE from WF_LOOKUP_TYPES
```

## Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

### Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Determine exchange rates (MRC) (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
4. Transfer all data to General Ledger (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
5. Calculate space requirements for new accounting tables (recommended)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Database Administrator

---

## Step 1: Determine exchange rates (MRC) (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)

Reference manual: **Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications**

Users must log off: Yes

TUMS Step Key: AP\_MRC\_EXCHANGE\_RATES

To determine exchange rates needed to upgrade existing AP/MRC, run apumccur.sql. Running this script has no effect on Receivables, as it gets Payables exchange rates only for exchange rate fields that did not exist before the upgrade. Run this script for each APPS schema (from the new APPL\_TOP). The instructions in the script indicate which daily rates combinations *must* be defined.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

Define the rates from the GL responsibility. Navigate to Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily. Rerun the script and enter missing rates until no more are reported.

**Additional Information:** See Entering Daily Rates in *Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide*.

---

## Step 2: Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices (required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)

Reference manual: **Open Interface Import (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)**

User must log off: No

TUMS Step Key: AP\_IMPORT\_AND\_PURGE\_INVOICES

Import and purge all invoices that are in the Payables Open Interface tables.

1. As the Payables Manager, choose Invoices > Entry > Open Interface Invoices.
2. Query all invoices. Import the ones that have a null value in the Status field.
3. To submit the Payables Open Interface Import program, choose Requests > Run. Select Single Request and choose OK. Type *Payables Open Interface Import* in the

Request Name field. Enter each source in the Parameters window, choose Yes for the Purge parameter, and click Submit Request.

4. For each completed import process, Payables automatically produces the Payables Open Interface report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the import program until you have imported all outstanding invoices.
5. To purge invoice data imported successfully but remaining in the tables, choose Requests > Run, select Single Request, and choose OK. Type Payables Open Interface Purge in the Request Name field. Click Submit Request.

### Step 3: Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices (required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: **Submit Invoice Import, (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7); Payables Invoice Import Program, (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11)**

User must log off this application: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **AP\_IMPORT\_AND\_PURGE\_EXPENSE\_REPORTS**

---

Import and purge all invoice and expense report records that are in the Payables Invoice Import interface tables.

1. From the new APPL\_TOP, run the following script:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
```

2. The script produces apuinimp.lst, which lists for each operating unit any sources for which you must import records and the number of records that must be imported. If there are no records listed, this step is complete. If there are records listed, import them.
3. In Payables, import the records for each operating unit.

- If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form in the old APPL\_TOP. For each source, submit import and enter the current date as the purge date.
  - If you are upgrading from GUI, choose Other > Requests > Run in the old APPL\_TOP. In the Submit Request window, select Single Request and choose OK. Submit the Payables Invoice Import program for each source, and enter the current date as the purge date.
4. For each completed import process, Payables automatically produces the Payables Invoice Import Exceptions report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the Payables Invoice Import program until you have imported all outstanding records.
  5. Purge any remaining records imported successfully but remaining in the tables. Perform these steps from the old APPL\_TOP.
    - If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form. Enter the current date as the purge date.
    - If you are upgrading from GUI, submit Payables Invoice Import with a purge date and a user-defined source. Payables automatically purges all successfully imported records, regardless of source.

#### **Step 4: Transfer all data to General Ledger (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) Reference Manual, Release 10.7 or Oracle Payables (or Public Sector) User's Guide, Release 10.7 or Release 11</b>	User must log off this application: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>AP_TRANS_ALL_DATA_TO_GL</b>	

All data in Oracle Payables must be transferred to the General Ledger. If you are using MRC, all reporting sets of books data must be transferred as well. Choose Other > Requests > Run. Choose "Payable Transfer to General Ledger" concurrent program.

#### **Step 5: Calculate space requirements for new accounting tables (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables) / Database Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	User must log off this application: <b>No</b>

---

**TUMS Step Key: AP\_SPACE\_REQ\_NEW\_ACCT\_TABLES**


---

The upgrade creates accounting entries for all Payables transactions (invoices and payments). Use the following formulas to estimate the maximum number of rows that the upgrade creates in each of the new accounting tables. Doing so reduces the chances of running into space issues during the upgrade. Once you know the number of rows to expect, you can calculate the space requirements for the tables and their indexes by multiplying by average record length.

<b>Table Name</b>	<b>Calculation Formula</b>
AP_ACCOUNTING_EVENTS_ALL	$2 * (\text{number of rows in AP\_INVOICES\_ALL}) + 3 * (\text{number of rows in AP\_CHECKS\_ALL})$
AP_AE_HEADERS_ALL	<p><math>\#\_of\_SOB * (\text{number of rows in AP\_ACCOUNTING\_EVENTS\_ALL calculated above}),</math> where <math>\#\_of\_SOB</math> is the total number of reporting currencies plus 1</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you use combined basis accounting, multiply the total number of reporting currencies by 2.</p>
AP_AE_LINES_ALL	$2 * (\text{number of rows in AP\_INVOICE\_DISTRIBUTIONS\_ALL} + \text{number of rows in AP\_PAYMENT\_DISTRIBUTIONS\_ALL} + \text{number of rows in AP\_RECON\_DISTRIBUTIONS\_ALL}) * \#\_of\_SOB$

These calculations provide an estimated size for these tables after the upgrade. Have the database administrator ensure that the tablespace(s) that include these tables are sized to handle the calculated size. Failure to do so could cause upgrade failures, and require you to modify tablespaces and restart the upgrade.

## Oracle Receivables Tasks

<b>Checklist</b>	<b>Performed by</b>
1. Diagnose and correct pre-existing database problems (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)
2. Reconcile Receivables tax transactions (required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)

**Step 1: Diagnose and correct pre-existing database problems (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)</b>
---	--

---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

---

TUMS Step Key: **AR\_DIAGNOSE\_DB\_PROBLEMS**

---

Inconsistent Receivables data may cause some Receivables upgrade scripts to fail. This step explains how to diagnose problems in the data and fix inconsistencies.

**Diagnose problems in the data:**

Run ar115chk.sql. It lists inconsistencies, without affecting the data in any way.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115chk.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115chk.sql
```

Review ar115chk.log in the directory where you ran the script. It lists the following types of inconsistencies, as well as suggested actions:

- Applications that have Earned Discounts but do not have an Earned Discount account.
- Applications that have Unearned Discounts but do not have an Unearned Discount account.
- Applications that have a Receivable Account that does not exist in Receivables but is required to create the Gain, Loss, or Currency Round accounting.
- Approved Adjustments for which the corresponding Transactions do not exist.

**Fix inconsistent data:**

You have two options:

- Manually fix inconsistent data listed in the script output files.
- Run ar115upd.sql to automatically update the missing (null) discount accounts with temporary accounts having a -1 code combination. This script also accurately derives the Receivable accounts needed for Gain, Loss, or Cross Currency Rounding accounting creation, if they are missing. This derivation

comes from the original transaction's Receivable account. The input parameter is the value of `utl_file_dir`. The output is written to `utl_file_dir/ar115upd.log`.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115upd.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115upd.sql
```

---



---

**WARNING: Do not proceed until you have addressed all inconsistent data either manually, or by using `ar115upd.sql`. All inconsistent data is fixed when `ar115upd.log` is blank.**

---



---

#### Identify changed records (optional):

After you run `ar115upd.sql`, run `ar115vrf.sql` to create a list of the changed records.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vrf.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vrf.sql
```

### Step 2: Reconcile Receivables tax transactions (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: Oracle Receivables Tax Manual	User must log off: Yes

In this release, tax accounting is available for adjustments, discounts, finance charges, and miscellaneous receipts. However, the upgraded version of the VAT Reconciliation report (renamed Tax Reconciliation during the upgrade) does not show the tax accounting for any receipt applications, discounts, finance charges, and miscellaneous receipts that were created prior to the upgrade, because tax accounting was not available for these transaction classes before Release 11i.

Print the VAT Reconciliation report for the period up to the date of the upgrade, and use this report to reconcile, for a given period, the tax amounts for a particular tax code with the GL balance of the tax liability account.

Run the report from the A/R responsibility. If you are upgrading from 10.7, run the report from Navigate > Reports > Accounting. If you are upgrading from 11.0, run the report from Reports > Accounting or from Control > Requests > Run.

**Additional Information:** See Tax Reconciliation Report in *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*.

## Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit (conditionally required)	Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland

### Step 1: Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland** Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Database Administrator** Users must log off: **Yes**

TUMS Step Key: **JG\_PARTITION\_EFT\_SYSTEM\_FORMATS**

Perform this step only if you are already using Multi-Org functionality.

Add the `ORG_ID` column to the `JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS` table and partition the table before it is converted to Multi-Org. The partition is created by assigning existing data to an appropriate operating unit so that it is accessible. Perform *both* steps for *each* installation of Oracle Payables.

#### To add the `ORG_ID` column:

Run `jgzzper1.sql` as follows:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

**To partition the existing data by operating unit:**

Run jgzzper2.sql once for every combination of country code and EFT type that exists in the database until each entry is assigned to an operating unit.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

## Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

## Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Back up custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

**Step 1: Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**      Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **No**      Users must log off: **Yes**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_TIMECARD\_APPROVAL**

PTE and Project Time and Expense are no longer supported. Timecard entry is now performed in the Self-Service Time application (implemented in Step 1 of the Oracle Projects Tasks in Chapter 6). If you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) in

Release 10.7 or Project Time and Expense in Release 11.0 to enter timecard information, submit all timecards entered in the existing application and obtain approval for each one. Do not enter any new timecards until after the upgrade.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide*. See also *Oracle Project Time and Expense User's Guide*.

### **Step 2: Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Projects)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>

---

Perform this step only if Oracle Project Billing is installed, and *all* the following conditions apply: you have not applied patchset D (Release 10.7), you have not upgraded to Release 11.0.2 (or later), and you have not applied patch 634580. If any of these conditions apply, do *not* perform this step.

Projects now generates the correct revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Run pa634580.sql from the new APPL\_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

At the prompt, enter Start Project Number and End Project Number to reduce processing time. The script produces a report (pa634580.lst), which lists the project and task number, event number, and the event amount for all events where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, create a revenue write-off event for each overstated amount. From the old APPL\_TOP:

1. Choose Billing > Events and select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window.
2. Query for the project you want to correct.
3. Choose New to display the Event Details window.

4. Enter the Task Number (if you want to create a task level event).
5. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-Off.
6. In the Revenue Amount field, enter the amount listed in pa634580.lst for the project and task.
7. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields and save your work.
8. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the report.

After you create the required revenue write-off events, run the Generate Draft Revenue process from the Submit Request (Requests > Run) window for each affected project.

**Additional Information:** See Events in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### Step 3: Back up custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **Yes**

Back up any custom client extension packages and views you have created. Reinstall them in Step 12 of Oracle Projects Tasks in Category 5. Run the backup from the old APPL\_TOP. The list of objects that you can customize includes:

File Name	Package Name
PAXPTRXS.pls and PAXPTRXB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Transfer
PAXPIACS.pls and PAXPIACB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions
PAXIBCXS.pls and PAXIBCXB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Bill_Cycle
PAXITMPS.pls and PAXITMPB.pls	MyPackageName
PAXICOSS.pls and PAXICOSB.pls	PA_Rev_CA
PAICPCAS.pls and PAICPCAB.pls	PA_CC_CA
PAXICTMS.pls and PAXICTMB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Billing
PAXPOTXS.pls and PAXPOTXB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Output_Tax
PAXPCTS.pls and PAXPCTB.pls	PA_Bill_Pct
PAPARICS.pls and PAPARICB.pls	PA_Override_AR_Inst

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Package Name</b>
PAXTGTCB.pls and PAXTGTCB.pls	PAGTCX
PAPSSTCS.pls and PAPSSTCB.pls	PA_TIME_CLIENT_EXTN
PAPSSDFS.pls and PAPSSDFB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_SST_DFF
PAXPTEES.pls and PAXPTEEB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_PTE
PAXTRT1S.pls and PAXTRT1B.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_RTE
PAXTTCXS.pls and PAXTTCXB.pls	PATCX
PAXTRTES.pls and PAXTRTEB.pls	PAROUTINGX
PAXBSGCS.pls and PAXBSGCB.pls	pa_client_extn_burden_summary
PAXCCECS.pls and PAXCCECB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Costing
PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls	PA_CALC_OVERTIME
PAXCCEBS.pls and PAXCCEBB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_BURDEN
PAXCCETS.pls and PAXCCETB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Txn
PAPDFFCB.pls and PAPDFFCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_DFFTRANS
PACCIXTS.pls and PACCIXTB.pls	PA_CC_IDENT_CLIENT_EXTN
PAPAAALCS.pls and PAPAAALCB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_autoalloc_pkg
PAPALCCS.pls and PAPALCCB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_alloc
PAPGALCS.pls and PAPGALCB.pls	PA_client_extn_gen_asset_lines
PAPMCECS.pls and PAPMCECB.pls	PA_multi_curr_client_extn
PAPTPRCB.pls and PAPTPRCB.pls	PA_CC_TP_client_extn
PAXGCES.pls and PAXGCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_cip_grouping
PAXORCES.pls and PAXORCEB.pls	PA_ORG_client_extn
PAPMGCES.pls and PAPMGCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_PM
PAWFPCEB.pls and PAWFPCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_project_wf
PAXPCECS.pls and PAXCECB.pls	PA_client_extn_proj_status
PAXVPS2S.pls and PAXVPS2B.pls	PA_client_extn_proj_status
PARCWFCB.pls and PARCWFCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_CAND_WF
PAXBCECS.pls and PAXBCECB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Budget
PAWFBCEB.pls and PAWFBCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_budget_wf
PACECMTS.pls and PACECMTB.pls	PA_client_extn_check_cmt
PAXVPS2S.pls and PAXVPS2B.pls	PA_client_extn_status

File Name	Package Name
PARAAPCS.pls and PARAAPCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_ASGMT_APPRVL
PARAWFCS.pls and PARAWFCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_ASGMT_WF

File Name	Workflow
patch/115/import/US/PAAPINWV.wft	PAAPINWV
patch/115/import/US/PAAPWEBX.wft	PAAPWEBX
patch/115/import/US/PARCANDD.wft	
patch/115/import/US/PARASGMT.wft	PAWFAAPB

Customizable Views	Customizable Views
pa_exp_ovrrde_approver_v	pa_online_projects_v
pa_online_tasks_v	pa_online_expenditure_types_v
PA_CDL_BURDEN_SUMMARY_V	PA_COMMITMNET_TXNS_V

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

## Manufacturing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Manufacturing products you have installed.

### Oracle Cost Management Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Verify that no uncosted transactions exist – Standard and Average Costing (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
2. Run WIP Value report – Standard and Average Costing (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
3. Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

**Step 1: Verify that no uncosted transactions exist – Standard and Average Costing (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>Release 10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Cost Management)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide, and Oracle Work in Process User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>

To verify that no uncosted transactions exist, check material inventory transactions and WIP pending resource transactions.

**If upgrading from Release 10.7 or 11.0:**

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to View Transactions > MTL Transactions. Choose WIP and navigate to Pending Resource Transactions. Perform this step from the old APPL\_TOP.

**If upgrading from Release 10.7 (character-mode) or 10.7NCA:**

See View Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10*, or View Pending Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10SC*.

**Step 2: Run WIP Value report – Standard and Average Costing (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Inventory or Cost Management)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>Yes</b>	

After you have completed the inventory and work in process transactions, run the WIP Value report for the latest accounting period. At a minimum, run this report for all jobs and repetitive schedules using the class sort and job/schedule sort.

1. From the old APPL\_TOP, as the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Report > Value (WIP Value report).
2. Choose Single Request or a Request Set (the Submit Request window appears).
3. In the Name field, select WIP Value Report (the Parameters window appears).
4. Enter the report parameters and choose OK (returns to the Submit Request window). Choose Submit.

**Additional Information:** See WIP Value Report in *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual*.

In Step 1 of the Oracle Cost Management Tasks in Category 5, run this report again and compare the Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 balances with the associated Release 11i balances. If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 10SC, see WIP Value Report in the *Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC*.

### Step 3: Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Inventory)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Inventory User's Guide or Oracle Cost Management User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>Yes</b>	
TUMS Step Key: <b>INV_CLOSE_ALL_ACC_PERIODS</b>	

Closing accounting periods summarizes costs based on transactions. Closing periods is *required for sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine*. And, it is highly recommended for all sets of books.

**Additional Information:** See Step 4 of the Global Accounting Engine Tasks in Chapter 2, .

## Order Management

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

### Oracle Inventory Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Complete physical inventories in process - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
2. Process data in temporary and interface tables - INV (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
3. Run inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

**Step 1: Complete physical inventories in process - INV (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

---

Follow the instructions in the Processing Physical Inventory Adjustments section of the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide* to complete any physical inventories in process. Enter tag counts and perform adjustments for each unfinished process. Perform this step from the old APPL\_TOP.

**Step 2: Process data in temporary and interface tables - INV (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

---

Before you perform this step, make sure the background processor is running.

1. Navigate to Inventory > Setup > Transactions > Interface Managers. (For character mode users, the path is: NAV/INQUIRY/TRANS/INTERFACE.)
2. From the Special menu, choose Launch Managers for each manager.

Complete transactions so that no information remains in the temporary (MTL\_MATERIAL\_TRANSACTIONS\_TEMP) table or in the interface tables (MTL\_TRANSACTIONS\_INTERFACE and MTL\_DEMAND\_INTERFACE). Run these steps from the old APPL\_TOP.

**To view pending transactions:**

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Find Pending Transactions window (Transactions > Pending Transactions).
2. Enter search criteria for the pending transactions you want to view, and choose Find. You can view the results in the Pending Transactions window.
3. Select a tabbed region to display a type of information: *Error, Location, Source, Intransit, or Other*.

**To resubmit transactions to the demand manager for processing:**

In the Pending Transactions window, select Submit for each transaction you want to resubmit, or choose Resubmit All from the Special menu. Save your work.

**Additional Information:** See Overview of Inventory Transactions in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

**Step 3: Run inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Inventory)</b>
---------------------------------------	---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

After you have completed the inventory transactions, run the Elemental Value report, the Subinventory Value report, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value report. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost responsibility under the old APPL\_TOP. Navigate to Reports > Value. At a minimum, run these reports sorted by item and by subinventory. In Step 2 of the Oracle Inventory Tasks in Category 5, run these reports again and validate the Release 10.7 or Release 11 inventory balances against the Release 11i balances.

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Accounting Close Cycle > Inventory Accounting Periods. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 10SC, see Period Close, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC*.

**Oracle Order Management Tasks**

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10 (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)

**Step 1: Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10 (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)</b>
---------------------------------------	--

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
---	-------------------------------

If you have not yet performed the Order Management Category 2 steps, or if you have processed new transactions since you completed the steps, perform the Category 2 steps now.

**Additional Information:** See Oracle Order Management Tasks, Chapter 2.

## Procurement

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Procurement products you have installed.

### Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Modify default MRP profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

#### **Step 1: Modify default MRP profile options (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>Release 10.7NCA, 10SC</b>	Performed by: <b>Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Users must log off: <b>Yes</b>

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, do not perform this step. If you used AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7 *character-mode*, the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window is available after the upgrade. Set these profile options at that time (Step 3 of the Oracle Purchasing Tasks in Category 5).

To accommodate the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries, AutoUpgrade assigns default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set. You may want to modify these defaults to suit your business needs.

Navigate to the System Profile Values window in the System Administrator responsibility (from the old APPL\_TOP). Query for MRP: Sourcing Rule Category Set and MRP: Default Sourcing Assignment Set to make sure that values are provided at the Site level.

#### **To modify MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set:**

You can set the MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set profile option to the name of the category set used by Purchasing, or to any other category set you require. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Setup > Items > Categories > Default Category Sets. Use the Category set name that appears next to the Purchasing Functional area.

**To modify MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set:**

You can set the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option to the assignment set used by Purchasing. If you already have a sourcing rule assignment set, you can choose it for this profile option value. If you do not, use the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window to create one. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Supply Base > Assign Sourcing Rules. Create an assignment set name and save it. Then choose this name in the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option.

---

**Attention:** Purchasing uses just one assignment set — the one indicated in this profile option. Therefore, AutoUpgrade assigns all newly created sourcing rules to this assignment set name.

---

**Additional Information:** See Automatic Sourcing in *Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide* or *Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

## Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

### Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Verify that all awards have a current, baselined budget (required)	Applications Specialist (Grants)
2. Run costing and funds check procedures (required)	Applications Specialist (Grants)
3. Run the update awards summary (required)	Applications Specialist (Grants)

#### **Step 1: Verify that all awards have a current, baselined budget (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide</b>	User must log off: Yes
TUMS Step Key: GMS_AWARD_BASEBUDGET_EXISTS	

A current baselined award budget is required for every award that has transactions charged to it. If a current baselined budget does not exist for such awards, the award budget balances and the transactions charged to it will NOT be upgraded.

From the new APPL\_TOP, run the following script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupaud.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupaud.sql
```

The script produces a report file (gms\_upgrade\_no\_budgets.lst), which lists award and project combinations that do not have a current, baselined budget. Re-baseline and/or establish a current baselined budget for any awards listed in the report.

**Additional Information:** For more information, see Budget Entry Procedures in the *Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*.

Complete and rerun this step until no awards are listed in the report before you proceed with the remaining Grants Accounting upgrade steps in this section.

**Step 2: Run costing and funds check procedures (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide	User must log off: Yes
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	
TUMS Step Key: GMS_RUN_COSTING_AND_FUNDS_CHECK	

---

Run the GMS costing and funds check procedures for expense reports, straight time labor, and usage. For more information, see the following sections in Chapter 33, Processes and Reports Procedures, *Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*:

- GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Expense Reports Expenditure Items Procedure
- GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Straight Time Labor Procedure
- GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Usages and Miscellaneous Costs Procedure
- GMS: Distribute Supplier Invoice Adjustment Costs and Funds check

**Step 3: Run the update awards summary (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Applications Specialist or Technical Specialist (Grants)</b>
--	---

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide</b>	User must log off this application: <b>Yes</b>
--	--

Requires concurrent manager: <b>Yes</b>
---

TUMS Step Key: <b>GMS_RUN_UPDATE_AWARDS_SUM</b>
---

Run the GMS Update Award Summary Amounts for a Range of Awards procedure. For information on how to run this procedure, see the following sections:

**Release 10.7:**

See GMS: Update Award Summary Amounts for a Range of Awards Procedure, Chapter 33, Processes and Reports, *Oracle Grants Management User's Guide*.

**Release 11.0:**

See GMS: Update Award Summary Amounts for a Range of Awards Procedure, Chapter 36, Processes and Reports Procedures, *Oracle Grants Management User's Guide*.

**Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks**

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop obsolete objects (required)	Technical Specialist

To upgrade from Version 3.3 of Oracle U.S. Federal Financials, users must apply Patch Set F or higher.

**Step 1: Drop obsolete objects (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>2.0, 3.3</b>	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
--	---

Reference manual: <b>No</b>	User must log off this application: <b>Yes</b>
-----------------------------	--

TUMS Step Key: <b>FV_DROP_OBJECTS</b>
---------------------------------------

For version 2.0 and 3.3, drop all seed data, obsolete database objects, and indexes. Check the log file fvdrpobj.log for errors.

### **Version 2.0:**

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql  
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv107obj.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql  
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv107obj.sql
```

### **Version 3.3:**

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql  
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv110obj.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql  
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv110obj.sql
```

## **Sales and Marketing**

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Sales and Marketing products you have installed.

### **Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks**

If you have implemented Oracle Sales, Oracle Service, or Oracle Sales Compensation, review *OracleMetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional pre-upgrade steps.

## **Service**

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Service products you have installed.

### **Oracle Service Tasks**

If you have implemented Oracle Service, review *OracleMetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional pre-upgrade steps.

## Database and System Administration

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade after completing the product-specific tasks and before running AutoUpgrade.

### System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Enable SYSADMIN user and password (required)	System Administrator

#### Step 1: Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **Yes**

If you originally installed Oracle Applications with Release 9.3 or earlier, ensure that the IDs for existing ORACLE schemas do not conflict with ones necessary for new schemas created by AutoUpgrade. To identify potential conflicts, run the following script from the new APPL\_TOP:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @adpuver.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adpuver.sql
```

Any ORACLE ID values listed by the script that are not associated with an APPS schema are potential conflicts, and may result in problems during the upgrade.

---

**Attention:** If you determine there is a potential conflict, contact Oracle Support Services.

---

**Step 2: Enable SYSADMIN user and password (required)**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Users must log off: **Yes**

Because AutoUpgrade must access the Oracle Application Object Library ORACLE username using the application user SYSADMIN, ensure that this application user exists and is enabled. SYSADMIN must also have access to the System Administrator responsibility. The name of this responsibility must be System Administrator and it must connect to the APPS schema for its data group. Set the password to SYSADMIN.

To verify this information, go to Security > User > Define and query for user name SYSADMIN. Perform the verification from the old APPL\_TOP.

**Database Upgrade Tasks**

<b>Checklist</b>	<b>Performed by</b>
<b>1.</b> Shut down applications listeners and concurrent managers (required)	Database Administrator
<b>2.</b> Migrate or upgrade the Oracle database (required)	Database Administrator
<b>3.</b> Set up Net8 (conditionally required) – database server	Database Administrator
<b>4.</b> Run preparatory scripts – database server (required)	Database Administrator
<b>5.</b> Run preparatory script – admin server (required)	Database Administrator
<b>6.</b> Gather database statistics for CBO (required)	Database Administrator
<b>7.</b> Gather database information (recommended)	Database Administrator
<b>8.</b> Check SQL*Plus options (required)	Database Administrator
<b>9.</b> Verify rollback segment sizing (required)	Database Administrator
<b>10.</b> Turn off automatic archive logging and Replication (required)	Database Administrator
<b>11.</b> Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
<b>12.</b> Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (required)	Database Administrator
<b>13.</b> Back up the database (recommended)	Database Administrator
<b>14.</b> Complete upgrade steps for NLS databases (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

**Step 1: Shut down applications listeners and concurrent managers (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

Users must log off: Yes

Shut down forms listeners, web listeners, and the concurrent managers before you begin the upgrade. Do this from the old APPL\_TOP.

**Ensure all concurrent process are complete:**

Before you shut down the concurrent managers, check to see that all processes are complete. Navigate to Concurrent > Requests. In the Find Requests window, select All my requests. Click Find. Cancel Pending requests as necessary.

**Shut down applications listeners and concurrent managers:**

As System Administrator, choose Administer Concurrent Managers. Navigate to the Control field and select Deactivate.

**Step 2: Migrate or upgrade the Oracle database (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle8i Migration

Users must log off: Yes

There are two sets of tasks listed in this step. Choose only the tasks that apply to the database.

---



---

**Attention:** You must migrate the database to an 8k block size. See Block Size in the Preface for more information.

---



---

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle8i Migration* and *Oracle8i Utilities*. See also *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

**If you migrated or upgraded to Release 8.1.7.4 in Category 1:**

If you migrated or upgraded the database in Category 1, follow the instructions described here. *You must complete these tasks before you continue with the upgrade.*

Switch the database to the Oracle8i ORACLE\_HOME that Rapid Install created in the Environment Preparation Tasks in Category 2 by performing the following steps:

1. Upgrade the Oracle8i to 8.1.7.4, if you have not done so already.
2. Move the init.ora parameter file from the initial 8.1.7.4 ORACLE\_HOME/dbs directory to the new 8.1.7.4 ORACLE\_HOME/dbs directory.
3. Carefully review the information about initialization parameters in *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 216205.1). Determine the appropriate parameters and set them in init.ora.
4. Relocate database files, if necessary.
5. Recreate control files, if necessary.
6. Start the database.

---

---

**Note:** Rapid Install has already created the ORACLE\_HOME with the appropriate RDBMS updates for this release.

---

---

Set up tablespaces as described in Step 2 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Chapter 2.

**If you are migrating or upgrading the Oracle RDBMS to Release 8.1.7.4 now:**

If you have not yet migrated or upgraded the database, follow the instructions described here. *You must migrate or upgrade the database before you continue with the upgrade.*

1. Using Oracle Universal Installer, install the latest certified Oracle8i Release 8.1.7.4 patch set in the 8.1.7.4 ORACLE\_HOME. Check the Certify section of OracleMetaLink for additional patches that may have been identified since the publication of this book.

---

---

**Note:** Do not perform the database upgrade steps listed in the Oracle8i Release 8.1.7.4 patch set release notes. All required database objects are created when you run the preparatory scripts later in this chapter.

---

---

2. Perform the migration or upgrade using the Oracle8i ORACLE\_HOME created by Rapid Install. Follow the instructions in *Oracle8i Migration, Release 3 (8.1.7)* to migrate the database.

---



---

**Note:** You will upgrade or migrate directly to Release 8.1.7.4. Disregard the admonition in the Release 8.1.7.4 readme file that tells you not to upgrade directly to 8.1.7.4.

---



---

3. Carefully review the information about initialization parameters in *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 216205.1). Determine the appropriate parameters and set them in init.ora.
4. Restart the database so that the parameters take effect.
5. Set up tablespaces. See Step 2 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Chapter 2.

### Step 3: Set up Net8 (conditionally required) – database server

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual: **Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide** Users must log off: **Yes**

Follow the instructions in *Configuring Non-Oracle Database Services: Configuring Net8 for External Procedures*, *Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide* and the *Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release Notes*.

### Step 4: Run preparatory scripts – database server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **Yes**

We provide scripts that create objects required by the RDBMS and other technology stack components on the database server. Each script creates one or more spool files and places them in the directory you ran the scripts from. Check the spool file for errors after you run each script.

Script (UNIX)	Script (Windows)	Description
addb817.sql	addb817_nt.sql	Sets up database SYS schema.
adsy817.sql	adsy817_nt.sql	Sets up database SYSTEM schema.

Script (UNIX)	Script (Windows)	Description
addbjava.sql	addbjava_nt.sql	Sets up database JAVA-related components. <i>Do not run this script if you have already migrated Jserver, and installed the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Running this script when JVM objects already exist will corrupt the database.</i>
addbmisc.sql	addbmisc_nt.sql	Sets up other database components.

1. Create \$ORACLE\_HOME/appsutil/admin on the database server.
2. Copy addb817.sql, adsy817.sql, addbjava.sql, and addbmisc.sql (UNIX) from \$APPL\_TOP/admin to \$ORACLE\_HOME/appsutil/admin. Or, on a Windows platform, copy the Windows versions from %APPL\_TOP%\admin to %ORACLE\_HOME%\appsutil\admin.
3. Set the environment to point to ORACLE\_HOME on the database server.

---

---

**Note:** Access the database server directly. *Do not* attempt to run any of these scripts using Net8.

---

---

4. Run the preparatory scripts in the following order:

**UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @addb817.sql
```

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @adsy817.sql
```

---

---

**Note:** Ignore any instructions to run adsysapp.sql at this time. You will run this script in Step 5 (on the admin server).

---

---

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @addbjava.sql
```

---

---

**Warning:** Do not run `addbjava.sql` if you have migrated Jserver, and installed the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Running this script when JVM objects already exist will corrupt the database.

---

---

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @addbmisc.sql <Remove Context> <Default Tablespace> \
    <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>
```

### Windows:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @addb817_nt.sql
```

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @adsy817_nt.sql
```

---

---

**Note:** Ignore any instructions to run `adsysapp.sql` at this time. You will run this script in Step 5 (on the admin server).

---

---

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @addbjava_nt.sql
```

---

---

**Warning:** Do not run `addbjava_nt.sql` if you have already migrated Jserver, and installed the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Running this script when JVM objects already exist will corrupt the database.

---

---

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect system/<system password>
SQL> @addbmisc_nt.sql <Remove Context> <Default Tablespace> \
    <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>
```

---

---

**Note:** The `addb817.sql` script may take a long time to run.

---

---

The arguments are as follows:

Argument	Description
Remove ConText	If there is an existing installation of Oracle ConText, remove it by setting this parameter to TRUE. Otherwise, accept the default value (FALSE).
Default Tablespace	Default tablespace for the Oracle <i>interMedia</i> schema (CTXSYS is recommended). If the CTXSYS tablespace does not exist, create it. The size required is 10 MB.
Temporary Tablespace	Temporary tablespace for the Oracle <i>interMedia</i> schema (TEMP is recommended).
Intermedia Shared Library	Full path name of the Oracle <i>interMedia</i> shared library: \$ORACLE_HOME/ctx/lib/libctx8.so (UNIX), or %ORACLE_HOME%\bin\oractxx8.dll (Windows).

---

**Note:** If you run this script inside SQL\*Plus instead of from the SQL\*Plus command line, enter the full path name for the *interMedia* Shared Library parameter. SQL\*Plus does not evaluate the ORACLE\_HOME variable when used with a parameter.

---

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle interMedia, Audio, Image, and Video User's Guide and Reference: Oracle8i Migration*.

### Step 5: Run preparatory script – admin server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Run this script from the admin directory under the APPL\_TOP. Make sure you have permission to write to that directory.

```
sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adsysapp2.sql <SYSTEM password>
```

Check the spool file for errors. Invalid packages in the database are acceptable. They are validated when you run AutoUpgrade.

**Step 6: Gather database statistics for CBO (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Concepts	Users must log off: Yes

See Database Upgrade Tasks, Chapter 1, Step 5 for information about gathering CBO database statistics.

**Additional Information:** See Cost-based Optimization (CBO) in the Preface.

**Step 7: Gather database information (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator /System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Administrator's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

The adupinfo.sql script generates a file called adupinfo.lst, which contains information needed later. Run adupinfo.lst from the new APPL\_TOP:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See Analyzing the Database in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

**Step 8: Check SQL\*Plus options (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

You should have set the SQL\*Plus PAUSE option OFF and the NEWPAGE option to a value other than 0 (zero). Use the adupinfo.lst file you created in Step 7 to verify these values.

**Step 9: Verify rollback segment sizing (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide** Users must log off: **Yes**

---

Use the segment sizing information in the adupinfo.lst file created in Step 7 to verify that rollback segments are large enough to handle upgrade data volume. Configure segments to avoid an ORA-01555 "Snapshot too old" error, typically, 1 segment per worker with an extent size of 1 MB and a minimum segment size of 60 MB.

**Additional Information:** See Temporary tablespace in the Preface.

**Step 10: Turn off automatic archive logging and Replication (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator /  
System AdministratorReference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide** Users must log off: **Yes**

---

If you have set up an automatic archive redo for log files or if you use Replication, perform the following tasks:

**Turn off archive logging:**

Run adstoplg.sql to turn off archive logging. This reduces the amount of disk space and shortens the time required by the upgrade. If you need to recover to an earlier point, it is faster to restore the database backup and rerun AutoUpgrade.

1. Copy adstoplg.sql from \$APPL\_TOP/admin/preupg (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\preupg (Windows) to the admin subdirectory you created in Step 4.
2. Set the environment to point to the ORACLE\_HOME on the database server.
3. Go to the admin subdirectory and run the script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @adstoplg.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
```

```
SVRMGR> @adstoplg.sql
```

### To disable Replication:

Before you run AutoUpgrade, turn off Replication. Refer to Disabling the Replication Feature in *Oracle8i Replication* for more information.

### Step 11: Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle8i Administrator's Guide,  
Oracle Applications Concepts

---

Users must log off: Yes

Disable custom triggers or constraints on Oracle Applications tables. Re-enable these triggers in Step 6 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Category 4. If you have custom indexes on Applications tables, determine whether they can affect performance during the upgrade, and drop them if necessary. If you aren't sure, it is best to drop the indexes and add them after the upgrade, if the new release has not created a similar index.

### Step 12: Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle8i Application Developer's Guide – XML

---

Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (plxmlparser\_v1\_0\_2.zip) and XML SQL Utility in the database.

---



---

**Note:** Be sure the Unzip program is in the PATH. A copy for most operating systems is in COMMON\_TOP/util/unzip.

---



---

1. Create an ORACLE\_HOME/appsutil/admin directory and an ORACLE\_HOME/appsutil/admin/xmlparser directory on the database server, if they do not already exist.
2. Copy plxmlparser\_v1\_0\_2.zip from COMMON\_TOP/util to ORACLE\_HOME/appsutil/admin/xmlparser and unzip it. This file creates several subdirectories in the current location.

3. Copy XSU12\_ver1\_2\_1.zip from COMMON\_TOP/util to ORACLE\_HOME/appsutil/admin and unzip it. This file creates a single subdirectory (OracleXSU12) and places everything under that directory.
4. Follow the installation instructions in the readme file for each product (xmlparser/lib/README for the XML Parser for PL/SQL, and OracleXSU12/lib/README for the XML SQL Utility).
5. Update XML Parser for Java version to ensure consistency between the application tier and the database.

If the database tier and the application tier are on the same server, change to the location of the JAVA\_TOP and run the loadjava command. If the application tier and the database tier are not on the same server, copy xmlparserv2.zip from \$JAVA\_TOP on any Applications server to a temporary location on the database server. Load it into the APPS schema using the following syntax:

```
@ loadjava -user <APPS username>/<APPS password> -r -v xmlparserv2.zip
```

Install all packages in the APPS schema (or all APPS schemas, if you have more than one).

### **Step 13: Back up the database (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide

Users must log off: Yes

---

Make a cold backup of the Oracle Applications database. If you encounter problems during the upgrade process, you can use this backup to restore your system to the same state as before you began the upgrade.

---

---

**Warning:** Shut down the database with the NORMAL option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the IMMEDIATE or ABORT option.

---

---

### **Step 14: Complete upgrade steps for NLS databases (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: No

Users must log off: Yes

---

If American English is the only active language in your system, omit this step.

If you are upgrading an NLS database, apply patch 1457345 (in pre-install mode) to prepare the database for the upgrade. This update is available in the patch download area on *OracleMetaLink*. Refer to the readme file for instructions.

## Run AutoUpgrade

You have now completed all the tasks necessary to prepare your Oracle Applications products for an upgrade. The next step is to run AutoUpgrade (adaimgr). For more information, refer to AutoUpgrade in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.



---

---

## Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

This chapter describes Category 4 steps — they affect the entire Oracle Applications system. The steps assume that you have already run AutoUpgrade as the last step in Category 3. *All users must be logged off the system and should not attempt to use any Oracle Applications product until these steps are complete.*

---

---

**Note:** When you perform upgrade finishing steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, run each from \$APPL\_TOP/admin/out (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\out (Windows) so the output does not overwrite others.

---

---

- Updates on page 4-2
- Environment Preparation Tasks on page 4-5
- Database Upgrade Tasks on page 4-6
- Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks on page 4-10
- System Administration Tasks on page 4-12
- Oracle FlexBuilder/ Account Generator Tasks on page 4-21
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks on page 4-23
- Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks on page 4-24
- Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks on page 4-25
- Environment Verification Tasks on page 4-26

## Updates

The first Category 4 tasks direct you to apply certain updates and patches, including database drivers, product-related updates. They also include information about installing translated software. All these tasks require AutoPatch. Some may also require other AD utilities.

**Additional Information:** See *Patching Your System in Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

## Update and Patching Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Apply AD mini-pack (required)	Database Administrator
2. Upgrade Sales and Service products (required)	Database Administrator
3. Update database to current Applications release level (required)	Database Administrator
4. Install translated software (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
5. Update installed and licensed products (required)	Database Administrator
6. Install online help (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Apply AD mini-pack (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Use AutoPatch in normal mode to apply the most recent AD mini-pack and any associated AD patches. Refer to the *Oracle Applications Release Notes* on *OracleMetaLink* for the latest information on required mini-packs and patches.

---



---

**Note:** AD mini-packs may require that you apply additional AD patches as a prerequisite. Review the mini-pack readme files and the associated AD patches for instructions.

---



---

If you apply the AD mini-pack associated with this release, you need only apply its database driver. You do not need to apply its copy driver because all files in the mini-pack are already included in the APPL\_TOP. In addition, there is no need to

apply any portion of the prerequisite patches in the mini-pack (for this release), as all the patches are included in the mini-pack.

### **Step 2: Upgrade Sales and Service products (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

---

If you have implemented Oracle Sales, Oracle Service, or Oracle Sales Compensation, review Oracle *MetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional steps *before* you continue with the remaining Category 4 steps.

### **Step 3: Update database to current Applications release level (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

---

To bring the database to the full Oracle Applications Release 11*i* maintenance level, apply the unified patch driver `u2669606.drv` on the administration server node. It is located in `$AU_TOP/patch/115/driver` (UNIX) or `%AU_TOP%\patch\115\driver` (Windows). Apply the patch by running AutoPatch with the following commands:

```
$ adpatch options=nocopyportion,nogenerateportion
```

Applying this patch is potentially long-running.

Applying a *unified* driver patch speeds up the application of a patch by running all patch drivers (database, copy, and generate) automatically. However, in the case of the maintenance patch, there is no copy driver or generate driver.

Adding `options=nocopyportion,nogenerateportion` to the `adpatch` command tells AutoPatch to run only the database driver portion of the patch. This behavior is new in release 11.5.9. See AutoPatch in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* for more information.

---



---

**Warning:** Do not attempt to complete the remaining upgrade steps or run Oracle Applications without first applying the AD minipack and this update.

---



---

**Step 4: Install translated software (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0 with one or more non-American English active languages**      Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **AD\_INSTALL-NLS**

---

The *only* language AutoUpgrade installs is American English. If American English is the only active language in your system, omit this step.

If you have installed languages other than American English, you must install the translated software for each active language now. See the *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* for instructions (available on *OracleMetaLink*).

**Step 5: Update installed and licensed products (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**      Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

---

Determine the latest product-specific patches. Then, download the patches for all active languages (American English and, if applicable, NLS translated languages) present in your system. Using AD Merge Patch, merge the American English patches. Then, merge the NLS translated patches (if any). Apply the American English patch first, then apply the NLS patch.

**Additional Information:** See *Applying Multiple Patches to an NLS Installation* in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

**Step 6: Install online help (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**      Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

---

Instructions for installing online help are located in the *Finishing your Upgrade* chapter of this book. However, you may want to install online help now so that you can reference it for the remaining upgrade steps. For instructions, see Step 2 of the *System Maintenance Tasks* in Chapter 7. Before you make the decision about when to install help, note that it may take a considerable amount of time to complete this process.

## Environment

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Database Upgrade, the Applications Technology, or the product-specific tasks.

### Environment Preparation Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
2. Configure Applications client software (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
3. Reapply customizations (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator

#### **Step 1: Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual: *Installing Oracle Applications*

As a pre-upgrade step, you ran Rapid Install to set up the technology stack and create the file system. Now, run Rapid Install to configure and restart the server processes. Go to Chapter 4 in *Installing Oracle Applications* and follow the instructions beginning with the Configure and Start Server Processes step. When instructed to do so, return here and complete the remaining Category 4 steps.

#### **Step 2: Configure Applications client software (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual: No

If your system uses multiple web servers, you must configure the client software to use the Oracle Java Virtual Machine on each web server before you log on to Oracle Applications for the first time, or run AutoPatch. See Configure Client Software in *Installing Oracle Applications* for instructions.

**Additional Information:** See *Complete Guide to JInitiator for Oracle's E-Business Suite: Overview, Setup & Troubleshooting* (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 162488.1). See also *Upgrading the JInitiator Version used with Oracle Applications 11i* (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 124606.1).

### Step 3: Reapply customizations (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator

Reference manual need: No

If you customized Applications environment files (APPLSYS.env or devenv), re-integrate them in the APPL\_TOP <SID>.env file, in devenv.env, or in the adovars.env file \$APPL\_TOP/admin (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin (Windows). Restart the application server processes so that the changes take affect.

**Additional Information:** See Managing Server Processes in Chapter 1 of *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

If your system includes customized forms, reports, programs, libraries, or other Applications files, reapply the changes that apply to the new release.

## Database

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Applications Technology steps or the product-specific steps.

### Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Reset ORACLE schema passwords (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
2. Gather database statistics for CBO (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
3. Set rollback segments for normal use (required)	Database Administrator
4. Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
5. Integrate custom objects and schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator

Checklist	Performed by
6. Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
7. Back up Oracle Applications (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator

### **Step 1: Reset ORACLE schema passwords (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

During the upgrade, Rapid Install preserves the passwords that you set previously for existing products. However, as it creates a schema for each *new* product installed, it sets up a default password derived from the product short name. To maintain product security, reset these default passwords now. Use the Oracle Users window from the System Administrator responsibility.

**Additional Information:** See Oracle Applications Schema Password Change Utility in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

### **Step 2: Gather database statistics for CBO (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

You run the Gather Schema Statistics concurrent program (System Administration > Submit Request) to gather database statistics. If the schema name is ALL, then all Apps-specific schema (having an entry in the FND\_PRODUCT\_INSTALLATIONS table) statistics are gathered. In addition to gathering index and table-level statistics, the procedure also gathers column-level histogram statistics for all the columns listed in the FND\_HISTOGRAM\_COLS table. *This program is potentially long-running.*

Because it is important to have an up-to-date set, gather database statistics periodically to make sure the database queries are optimized.

**Additional Information:** See Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. See also Cost-based Optimization in *Oracle Applications Concepts* and Introduction to Optimization in *Oracle8i Concepts*.

### **Step 3: Set rollback segments for normal use (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

---

Reference manual: Oracle8i Administrator's Guide

---

Set the rollback segments for normal operation, typically, 1 for each 25 users, plus 1 for each concurrent manager. Make the extent size 1 MB, and the minimum segment size 60 MB.

### **Step 4: Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator  
/ System Administrator

---

Reference manual: No

---

Before you continue with the upgrade, fix invalid objects in the database.

---

---

**Important:** *MRC users must perform this step. You must correct all problems in the report and log files before continuing. Failure to do so will result in an incomplete or unusable MRC installation.*

---

---

1. Create list of invalid objects.

From the AD Administration main menu, select the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu. Run the "Validate APPS schema(s)" task. Review the output and take corrective action as indicated in the report.

2. Compile objects in APPS schema.

From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu, run the "Compile APPS schema(s)" option to compile all the invalid objects in the APPS schema.

3. Re-generate list of invalid objects. Re-compile the invalid objects until the list contains only those that are considered acceptable. See the latest version of the

---

*Oracle Applications Release Notes* for a list of acceptable invalid objects for this release.

**Additional Information:** See AD Administration in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

### **Step 5: Integrate custom objects and schemas (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator  
/ System Administrator

---

Reference manual: *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

---

If you previously created custom objects or have custom schemas that must be tightly integrated with Oracle Applications, follow the steps in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* to re-integrate these customizations with the APPS schema.

Release 11i uses Invoker Rights for most PL/SQL packages. Executing these packages from custom schemas may require additional grants from, and synonyms to, APPS schema objects. We recommend you explicitly declare Invoker Rights or Definer Rights for custom PL/SQL packages. See *Oracle8i PL/SQL User's Guide and Reference* for more information.

Custom database objects must follow the naming standards for custom object names to avoid conflict with Oracle Applications.

---

---

**Warning:** When naming database objects, use XX as a part of the short name. For example, you might define a the custom application to use the short name XXGL, and database objects to begin with an XXGL\_ prefix.

---

---

**Additional Information:** See Naming Standards in *Oracle8i Applications Developer's Guide*.

### **Step 6: Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 Performed by: Database Administrator/System Administrator

---

Reference manual: *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*  
*Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

---

During the upgrade, custom triggers or constraints may have been modified. If you disabled these triggers and constraints in Step 11 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Category 3, identify any data updates that must be made before you re-enable them.

If you dropped any custom indexes in the same step, review the new data model to determine if the index is necessary before you redefine it.

### **Step 7: Back up Oracle Applications (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator  
/ System Administrator

---

Reference manual: **Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide, Oracle Applications Concepts**

---

Have the system administrator back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, have the database administrator back up the Oracle Applications database.

## Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

The following generic MRC steps must be performed to implement this feature across the products that use it. The steps assume an upgrade from Oracle Applications Release 11.0. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 and want to activate MRC in Release 11i, follow the steps in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* to install MRC after you complete the upgrade to Release 11i.

---

---

**Note:** MRC is enabled in the Vision Demo database, but not in the production and test databases. See *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* for more information.

---

---

## Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Maintain MRC schema(s) (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
2. Verify MRC installation (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### **Step 1: Maintain MRC schema(s) (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

---

---

 Reference manual: No
 

---

To ensure that the MRC schema is consistent with the changes to the APPS schema, and to compile the objects in the APPS\_MRC schema, complete these steps:

1. From the AD Administration Main Menu, go to the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu. Run the Maintain Multiple Reporting Currencies Schema(s) option.
2. Perform these steps, making sure that you indicate Yes for all questions:

Update MRC schema itself (MRC schema objects are always updated) [Yes]?

Compile invalid objects after updating MRC schema objects [Yes]?

Recreate MRC triggers in the APPS schema(s) [Yes]?

---

**Note:** Re-run Maintain Multiple Reporting Currencies Schema(s) when you make changes in the future. For example, if an update changes schema objects, run this option after you apply the update to ensure that the MRC schema is consistent with changes to the APPS schema.

---

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

## Step 2: Verify MRC installation (conditionally required)

---

 Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

 Performed by: Database Administrator
 

---

 Reference manual: No
 

---

To verify the success of the MRC installation, run advrfmrc.sql. It:

- Verifies that for every package in APPS schema, there is an equivalent package or synonym in APPS\_MRC schema.
- Verifies that there are no functions or packages missing in the APPS\_MRC schema.
- Verifies that there are no database triggers in APPS\_MRC schema, and all required MRC triggers are present in the APPS schema.
- Verifies that the MRC data group is defined.
- Tells you how to correct errors in the APPS\_MRC schema.

To run advrfmrc.sql as follows:

**UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$AD_TOP/admin/sql/advrfmrc.sql \  
<APPS schema name> <APPS schema name> <APPS_MRC schema name>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%AD_TOP%\admin\sql\advrfmrc.sql \  
<APPS schema name> <APPS schema name> <APPS_MRC schema name>
```

## Applications Technology

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the product-specific steps.

### System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Configure Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer (required)	System Administrator
2. Fix flexfields cross-validation rules (required)	Technical Specialist
3. Set profile options (required)	System Administrator
4. Convert flexfield Date and DateTime value sets (recommended)	Technical Specialist
5. Upgrade flexfield date and number data (required)	Technical Specialist
6. Set up electronic mail for concurrent managers (required)	System Administrator
7. Reconnect spawned concurrent programs (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
8. Update/verify custom responsibilities (conditionally required)	System Administrator
9. Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
10. Migrate the CUSTOM library (recommended)	System Administrator
11. Copy existing custom start scripts (conditionally required)	System Administrator
12. Restrict access to concurrent processing servers (required)	System Administrator
13. Load attachment files into database (conditionally required)	System Administrator

---

**Step 1: Configure Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide

---

If you use the Oracle Workflow Notification Mailer to send and receive e-mail notification messages, and you have not already upgraded to the new Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer, you must do so now. The previous C-based Notification Mailer concurrent program and Generic Service Management Notification Mailer are obsolete.

You configure the Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer through the notification mailer configuration wizard in Oracle Applications Manager. You run it using the Generic Service Management (GSM) feature of Oracle Applications concurrent processing. For more information, refer to *Implementing Notification Mailers*, *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*, and to the Oracle Applications Manager online help.

---

**Step 2: Fix flexfields cross-validation rules (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Technical Specialist

Reference manual: No

---

To list flexfield cross-validation rules that have no lines and fix any invalid data, run the following script. It prompts as follows:

- List all bad rule lines? (yes or no)  
Type Yes to list the invalid lines *without* fixing the data.
- Delete all bad rule lines? (yes or no)  
Type Yes to fix the invalid data.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

**Step 3: Set profile options (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **Product-specific implementation manuals, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

---

To see instructions for setting profile options and a list of required options, refer to the product-specific implementation documentation and *OracleMetaLink*.

**Additional Information:** See Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

**Step 4: Convert flexfield Date and DateTime value sets (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

---

Reference manual: **No**

---

Convert flexfield segments or report parameters that use the format type Date or DateTime to use the format type Standard Date or Standard DateTime. Use the Flexfields List Data or DateTime Set Usages concurrent program to view a list of the value set usages.

**Review value set usages:**

Log in as the system administrator and choose Requests > Run. Run the Flexfields List Data or DateTime Set Usages concurrent program, and review the log file. Old-type value set usages that are seeded value sets can be replaced by seeded standard date value sets. If you have used custom value sets or pre-seeded standard value sets, use the clone feature.

**Clone value sets:**

If you have custom value sets, run the following concurrent program:

1. As the system administrator, choose Requests > Run. Run the Flexfields Clone a Date, or DateTime Value Set as Standard Date, or Standard DateTime Value Set program.
2. Enter old value set name as a parameter. The new value set name defaults to <old>\_STANDARD.
3. Continue until all custom value sets are cloned.

---



---

**Note:** Attributes of the value sets, such as independent and dependent values or hierarchy information, are not copied to the new value set.

---



---

**Replace old-type value set usages:**

If you find old-type value sets, locate the flexfield segments and report parameters that use them, and update them to use the new ones. As the system administrator, you can update the following value sets:

- For key flexfield segments, choose Flexfields > Key > Segments.
- For descriptive flexfield segments, choose Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments.
- For report parameters, choose Concurrent > Programs > Parameters.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

**Step 5: Upgrade flexfield date and number data (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

---

To support multiple formats, all flexfield date and number data is stored in a canonical form. To upgrade the transaction data in the date and number value sets to reflect this canonical form, you can use the following concurrent programs:

- Flexfields Upgrade All Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Sets
- Flexfields Upgrade One Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Set
- Flexfields Upgrade All Number Value Sets
- Flexfields Upgrade One Number Value Set

Run the All Standard and All Number value sets programs now:

1. As the system administrator, choose Requests > Run.
2. Run both the Flexfields Upgrade All Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Sets and the Flexfields Upgrade All Number Value Sets concurrent programs.

At any time in the future, you can upgrade a single value set. Choose the Flexfields Upgrade One Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Set or the Flexfields Upgrade One Number Value Set. Supply the name of the value set when prompted.

**Step 6: Set up electronic mail for concurrent managers (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

---

The concurrent managers send mail to the applmgr user if the Internal concurrent manager stops running. Set up the electronic mail for the applmgr user. The log file for the Internal concurrent manager shows an error if mail is not set up correctly.

**Step 7: Reconnect spawned concurrent programs (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Technical Specialist

Reference manual: Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual

---

If you have developed shell script concurrent programs (that use the Host execution method), reconnect the programs to the concurrent manager interface. Copy the concurrent programs from the old PROD\_TOP to the new one. Change the working directory to the directory that contains the concurrent program executable. Then, reconnect the concurrent program as follows:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $<PROD>_TOP/bin
$ ln -s $FND_TOP/bin/fndcpepr <program>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %<PROD>_TOP%\bin
C:\> copy %FND_TOP%\bin\fndcpepr.exe <program>.exe
```

Parameter descriptions are as follows:

- <PROD> The custom application product short name.
- <program> The name you used to define the concurrent program executable in Oracle Applications without any filename extension.

**Additional Information:** See Implementing Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Processing and Product Customizations Standards in *Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual*.

**Step 8: Update/verify custom responsibilities (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7SC, 10.7NCA

Performed by: System Administrator

---

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

---

Verify that all custom responsibilities use the correct menu. From the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to Security > Responsibilities. Query each custom responsibility and update as necessary.

### **Step 9: Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

---

Copy custom shell scripts or reports that are part of Oracle Applications to the custom application directories and re-customize the copy as necessary.

**Additional Information:** See Product Customization Standards in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

### **Step 10: Migrate the CUSTOM library (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

---

Before you copy custom code in the CUSTOM library to the new directory structure, refer to the backup you created in Step 2 of the System Administration Tasks in Category 1 and verify that the customizations are valid for the new version of Oracle Applications.

For valid customizations, place a copy of the new CUSTOM library (CUSTOM.pll) in a safe place. It is located under the new APPL\_TOP in \$AU\_TOP/resource (UNIX), or %AU\_TOP%\resource (Windows). Then, make a copy of the old Oracle Forms 4.5-based CUSTOM library and place it in the new directory. Upgrade to Oracle Forms Developer 6i by regenerating the library. Or, you can cut and paste the existing custom code into the new library, and then regenerate it.

**Additional Information:** See Using the CUSTOM Library in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

### **Step 11: Copy existing custom start scripts (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administration Guide**

---

If you have customized the concurrent manager startup script (`startmgr`), copy the script from the old environment to the new environment. Then, verify that the customizations are valid for the new environment.

---

---

**Note:** The default location in UNIX for the `startmgr` script is `$FND_TOP/bin`. For more information, see *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

---

---

### **Step 12: Restrict access to concurrent processing servers (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

---

You view log and output files on the desktop client using the Report Review Agent and the Web Report Review tools. So, it is not necessary to have direct access to the concurrent processing servers to view these files.

To ensure the security of Oracle Applications log and output files, limit user access to the concurrent processing servers. If users must have direct access to the concurrent processing servers for other reasons, follow the steps in this section to restrict access to the log and output directories.

1. Create a UNIX Edition group for directory users.

Create a UNIX Edition group consisting of `applmgr` and the users who need access to the directory. For example, you might create the group `glusers` for all users of Oracle General Ledger. Groups are defined in the group file of the *etc* directory.

2. Change directory file protection.

From the `applmgr` account, change the file protection of a directory so that it has no global privileges:

```
$ chmod 770 <directory>
```

In the following example, the *r* and *x* shown in the system response indicate that there are global read and execute privileges for the directory:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP
$ ls -ldg out
```

```
drwxrwxr-x 2 applmgr misappl 29423 Jan 12 10:27 out/
      ^ ^
```

After the directory privilege is changed, the system response lists three dashes for global privileges, indicating that all global privileges have been revoked:

```
$ chmod 770 out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx--- 2 applmgr misappl 29423 Jan 12 10:27 out/
      ^ ^
```

### 3. Change directory group.

Change a directory's group to the new UNIX Edition group:

```
$ chgrp <group> <directory>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ chgrp glusers out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx--- 2 applmgr glusers 29423 Jan 12 10:27 out/
```

The system response indicates that the group has been changed from *misappl* to *glusers*.

### 4. Alter file privilege for concurrent manager files (optional).

The operating system user that starts the concurrent managers (*applmgr*) owns all log and output files created by the managers. Oracle Applications uses the UNIX command *umask* to remove write privilege to these files from all users except the owner. You can change privileges by changing the value of *umask*.

The *startmgr* script uses the *umask* value set by the environment variable *\$APPLMSK* in *findenv*. To change this value, modify *\$APPLMSK*. For higher security, override the value of *\$APPLMSK* in *startmgr*. If you are setting up parallel concurrent processing, do the same for *dcpbatch*.

To modify the *umask* value in *startmgr* or *dcpbatch*, change to *\$FND\_TOP/bin* and display the script with the file editor of your choice. Find the following line:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"022"}
```

This line indicates that if *\$APPLMSK* is not set, the *umask* command uses the value 022. Modify the alternate value by substituting a new one. For example:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"026"}
```

Use a 3-digit value as an argument to override *\$APPLMSK*. For example:

umask 022

---

---

**Note:** The UNIX man page for *umask* contains more information on the command and settings.

---

---

If you change *umask* values, remember to give the owner of a file read and write privilege.

5. Restrict access to scripts (optional).

To enhance security, give only the *applmgr* login write permission for *startmgr* and *batchmgr*. If you are using parallel concurrent processing, do the same for *dcpstart* and *dcpbatch*. Also change the restrictions on any custom scripts that call these files. The following commands prevent all users (except *applmgr*) from altering the scripts:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/bin
$ chmod 700 startmgr batchmgr dcpstart dcpbatch
```

### Step 13: Load attachment files into database (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7NCA, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator

---

Reference manual: No

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

---

In Step 1 of the System Administration Tasks in Category 1, you determined the location of any existing attachment files. In this step, you load them into the database.

1. In the operating system on the application server, change to the directory you created in Category 1, Step 1.
2. Type the following command on one line with a space between *FND\_ATTACH* and *PLS\_CALLBACK*, where *<DB Connect String>* is the *username/password@Oracle SID* of the *APPS* account (for example *apps/apps@TEST*) and *\** is a wildcard indicating that all files in the directory should be uploaded to the attachments tables in the database:

```
FNDGFU <DB Connect String> 0 Y UPLOAD PROGRAM_NAME=FND_ATTACH \
PLS_CALLBACK=FND_ATTACHMENT_UTIL_PKG.UPDATE_FILE_METADATA *
```

3. Check the log file produced by *FNDGFU* (located in the same directory with the file name *L<concurrent request ID>.log*). Correct errors listed in the file.

## Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow (required)	System Administrator
2. Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Update Account Generator process (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / System Administrator
4. Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / System Administrator

### Step 1: Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide

Oracle Workflow is installed by AutoUpgrade. See the *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide* for manual setup steps required to complete the installation.

### Step 2: Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Workflow Client Installation Notes

Oracle Workflow Builder (client-side) is installed using Oracle Installer. If you are customizing the default Account Generator process, see the *Client Installation Notes* on the *Oracle Workflow Client* CD.

### Step 3: Update Account Generator process (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Application Specialist / System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Flexfields Guide

If you customized the default Account Generator process, but did not change its name, omit this step.

If you customized the Account Generator process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type and assigned it a new name, upgrade the Account Generator. The following table shows the Account Generator item types and default processes that you can view and modify using Oracle Workflow.

Product	Item Type	Default Process Name
Oracle Assets	FA Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Order Entry	Generate Cost of Goods Sold Account	Generate Default Account
Oracle Projects	Project Expense Report Account Generator	Default Account Generator for Expense Reports
	Project Supplier Invoice Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Purchasing	PO Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
	PO Requisition Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
Oracle Receivables	AR Substitute Balancing Segment	Replace Balancing Segment

The <product name> Account Generator sections in individual product user's guides contain details.

**Additional Information:** See Account Generator in <product name> in *Oracle Assets User's Guide*, *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*, and *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

There are three ways to upgrade the Account Generator.

1. Do nothing. If they meet your accounting requirements, you can use the Account Generator default processes provided by each product that previously used FlexBuilder.
2. Associate FlexBuilder process to use customized FlexBuilder rules. If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7, and want to continue using the existing FlexBuilder customizations, migrate those business rules into the Account Generator.
3. Develop a new default Account Generator process by creating a new process or copying the existing default and changing the name. Use the renamed process as a base for the changes.

**Additional Information:** See Customizing the Account Generator in *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

### Step 4: Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7      Performed by: Application Specialist / System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Flexfields Guide

If your system uses customized flexfields, use the Account Generator Processes window to associate the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

**Additional Information:** See Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure in *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

## Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

### Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Performed for this country...
1. Modify truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)	All

### Step 1: Modify truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)

Perform for this country: All

Perform if upgrading from: 10SC Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator / IS Manager

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

TUMS Step Key: JA\_MODIFY\_LOOKUPS

After reviewing the results of the migration and the report you created in Step 1 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Category 2, you may need to modify migrated lookups and custom modules if they reference truncated lookup codes or renamed lookup meanings.

During the upgrade, the original JA lookup tables (JA\_LOOKUP\_TYPES and JA\_LOOKUPS) are renamed to JA\_LOOKUP\_TYPES\_OLD and JA\_LOOKUPS\_OLD,

respectively. Views with the original table names are created instead. These views are based on FND lookup tables to which JA lookups are migrated. The upgrade does not remove these `_OLD` tables. You can use them as a reference if you need to manually change the migrated lookups or customized modules.

If your customized modules reference obsolete lookups, you may need to manually migrate the obsolete lookups from the `_OLD` tables. (Release 11i Oracle Applications generic modules do not reference obsolete lookups.)

**Additional Information:** See Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific in *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

## Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation (conditionally required)	All

### Step 1: Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: All

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Database Administrator

TUMS Step Key: JG\_UPDATE\_DFF\_AOL\_DATE\_VALIDATION

The validation for date fields within globalization flexfields was changed so that you can correctly store and retrieve date information in globalization flexfield attribute columns, regardless of the language that was used when dates were entered. To upgrade date values in the flexfield columns:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

Because the language that you use determines the way dates are entered, run this script once for each language that is installed.

## Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

### Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run migration driver (required)	Database Administrator/Applications Specialist (Grants)

#### Step 1: Run migration driver (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

TUMS Step Key: **GMS\_RUN\_MIGRATE\_DRIVER**

Before you run the migration driver, verify and set values for the following profile options:

number of parallel threads (default = 10)

number of awards processed per commit (default = 500)

update open/close awards (default = All)

Apply the data migration driver (gmsup115.drv) using AutoPatch. It is located in \$GMS\_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %GMS\_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Refer to gmsup115.txt in the readme directory for more information. Review gms\_upgrade\_billing\_verification.out and gms\_upgrade\_balances\_verification.out in the out directory.

## Environment

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade to verify the post-install environment.

### Environment Verification Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Verify application server DAD (required)	System Administrator

#### **Step 1: Verify application server DAD (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**      Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **Yes**

---

Verify that the DAD you set up for the APPS schema is working properly.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

---

---

## Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

This chapter describes Category 5 steps — they affect only specific products, making them unavailable until the steps are complete.

- Implementation and Setup Tasks on page 5-2
- Oracle General Ledger Tasks on page 5-3
- Global Accounting Engine Tasks on page 5-5
- Oracle Payables Tasks on page 5-6
- Oracle Receivables Tasks on page 5-9
- Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks on page 5-18
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks on page 5-19
- Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks on page 5-20
- Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks on page 5-20
- Oracle Projects Tasks on page 5-29
- Oracle Time and Labor Tasks on page 5-41
- Oracle Payroll Tasks on page 5-41
- Oracle Cost Management Tasks on page 5-43
- Oracle MRP/Supply Chain Planning Tasks on page 5-45
- Oracle Order Management Tasks on page 5-47
- Oracle Purchasing Tasks on page 5-53
- Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks on page 5-60
- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks on page 5-62

- Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks on page 5-62
- Oracle Service Tasks on page 5-63

## All Products

Product-specific implementation or setup steps are an integral part of the upgrade. These steps may be needed to "turn on" new functionality added during the upgrade process or set up new product features.

## Implementation and Setup Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Review product-specific documentation (required)	Application Specialists

### Step 1: Review product-specific documentation (required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialists

---

Reference manual: **Product-specific users guides**

Do before anyone uses: **All Oracle products**

---

Before you begin the Category 5 steps, review the product-specific documentation and associated Oracle*MetaLink* notes for the products you have installed to see if there are any implementation or setup steps that must be performed to "turn on" or implement new features of products that were added during the upgrade process.

1. Determine which products you have installed.
2. Make sure you have the product documentation for each product.
3. Review the implementation and/or setup information in the product guides.
4. Perform these steps as appropriate for your system.

## Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

## Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate conflicting daily rates (conditionally required)	Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (GL)

### Step 1: Migrate conflicting daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Database Administrator /  
Application Specialist (GL)

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide; Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle General Ledger/Oracle Public Sector General Ledger**

TUMS Step Key: **GL\_MIGRATE\_CONFLICTING\_DAILY\_RATES**

Perform this step if you:

- maintain daily rates for more than one set of books in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.
- want to retain descriptive flexfield information associated with daily rates.

---

**Note:** Even though users should not log on before you complete this step, the person performing the upgrade can log on to check the upgrade success or failure, examine upgraded daily rates, or define new conversion types.

---

#### To migrate conflicting daily rates:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report:

##### UNIX:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
```

##### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
```

2. Review the report. If no daily rates conflicts exist, and you do not want to retain any descriptive flexfields associated with the daily rates, no further action is required.
3. If conflicting rates exist, or if you want to retain descriptive flexfields, run the following script to migrate the rates:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql  
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql  
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
```

The script requires the following parameters:

<b>For this parameter...</b>	<b>Enter the following...</b>
Set of Books Name	the name of the set of books from which you want to transfer rates.
From Conversion Type	the conversion type of the rates to be transferred.
From Currency	the From currency of the rates to be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates for all From currencies.
From Date	the starting date (DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates should be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates starting with the earliest date for which daily rates are defined.
To Date	the ending date (DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates should be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer all rates starting with the From Date up to and including the most recent date for which daily rates are defined.
Destination Conversion Type	the conversion type to assign to the rate after it has been transferred. This conversion type must already exist in your system.
Override Flag	Y if you want to replace rates that already exist in the rate set; N if you only want to add new rates to the rate set.

---

---

**Note:** Do not use leading or trailing spaces when entering these parameters. Also note that the parameters are case-sensitive.

---

---

4. To retain descriptive flexfield information for daily rates, use the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window to redefine the flexfields used in Release 10.7.

---



---

**Attention:** Define the descriptive flexfields in the new GL\_DAILY\_RATES table. The Release 10.7 definitions are not transferred from the GL\_DAILY\_CONVERSION\_RATES table.

---



---

## Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate existing date and non-integer data (required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist
2. Populate tax information for accounting lines (required)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Migrate existing date and non-integer data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator / Application Specialist

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Product Update Notes, Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide, Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual

Do before anyone uses: Global Accounting Engine, Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Inventory

TUMS Step Key: AX\_MIGRATE\_NON\_INTEGER\_DATA

Use the scripts in this step to migrate date and non-integer data (that was previously stored in character columns) to the date and number columns. Before you run the scripts:

1. Set the NLS\_DATE\_FORMAT environment variable to DD-MON-RR.
2. Ensure that NLS\_LANG is set to the same language used prior to upgrading.
3. Ensure that NLS\_NUMERIC\_CHARACTERS is set to the same format used prior to upgrading.

These scripts were designed to migrate data originally created in one language, one numeric character format, and a date format of either DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD. An error message appears if more than one language or numeric character format was used, or if a date format other than DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD was used to store the date in the character column. If you get this error message, update the character column values to use the same format, and re-run the scripts. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

To migrate data for the AX\_SLE\_LINES table:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

To migrate data for the AX\_DOCUMENT\_STATUSES table:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

**Step 2: Populate tax information for accounting lines (required)**


---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine**

---

TUMS Step Key: **AX\_POPULATE\_TAX\_INFO**

---

The upgrade adds new columns to the AX\_SLE\_LINES table to support tax reporting. Run axxpos06.sql to populate these columns with tax information for the upgraded accounting lines. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos06.sql <batchsize>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\patch\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos06.sql <batchsize>
```

**Oracle Payables Tasks**

Checklist	Performed by
1. Remodify payment formats (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Checklist	Performed by
2. Set up prepayment payment terms (recommended)	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Remodify payment formats (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: **Setting Up Custom Formats, Payment Formats, and Defining and Maintaining Payables Payment Documents (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

TUMS Step Key: **AP\_REMODIFY\_PAYMENT\_FORMATS**

Do *not* perform this step if you are upgrading from an English-only installation and have never renamed or modified the attributes of any Payables seeded payment format.

---



---

**Attention:** Unless these two conditions are true, you *MUST* perform this step for all Latin American countries that have country-specific Payment Formats (Argentina, Brazil, Chile, and Colombia). This applies to Release 10.7 and Release 11.0.

---



---

In Release 11, we enhanced the architecture of each of the seeded payment formats. If you modified Release 10.7 payment formats, replace them with the Release 11/11*i* formats. A payment format may have been modified as follows:

- You renamed it in the Payment Formats window.
- You changed its attributes in the Payment Formats window.
- Oracle translated the name for a non-English version of Payables.

Perform this step to ensure all Release 11*i* payment formats use the same names and attributes as the payment formats you used before the upgrade. This provides continued support of the Payables seeded payment formats in future releases.

During the upgrade, the system identifies each Payables seeded payment format that requires this step and adds a @ symbol to the beginning of its name. Run the following script to create a list of all modified payment formats assigned to payment documents:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

This script produces apucfrpt.lst, which lists the following values for each modified payment format that you have assigned to a payment document: Bank, Branch, Account, Payment Document, and Payment Format.

For each payment format on the report, perform the following steps.

1. In the Payment Formats window, query the name of the seeded (unmodified) payment format you used to create the modified payment format.
2. Duplicate the attributes and name of the modified payment format.
3. Save your work.
4. Open the Payment Documents window of the Banks form and query the payment document to which you had assigned the modified payment format.
5. In the Payment Format field, delete the @ from the payment format name so that it matches the new Release 11i-based payment format name.
6. Save your work.

**Step 2: Set up prepayment payment terms (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: **Payment Terms (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

---

TUMS Step Key: **AP\_SETUP\_PREPAYMENT\_TERMS**

---

The prepayment functionality has changed. In order to get the same default behavior (payment terms of Immediate when entering a prepayment-type invoice), set up default payment terms for the Prepayment invoice types. For example, you may want to default Immediate payment terms to all prepayments.

1. For each operating unit, choose Setup > Invoice > Payment Terms.
2. In the Payment Terms window, define the payment terms that you want to use as the default for all prepayments. Save your work.

3. For each operating unit, navigate to the Payables Options window (Setup > Options > Payables).
4. Select the Invoice tabbed region. In the Prepayment Payment Terms field, enter the default payment terms. Save your work.

### Step 3: Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables

TUMS Step Key: AP\_MRC\_DATAMODEL\_UPG

Perform this step if you have implemented Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC).

To maintain compatibility, data model changes made to Oracle Payables require changes to the AP/MRC data model. Apply the data model upgrade driver dapmc115.drv using AutoPatch. The driver is located in \$AP\_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %AP\_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Refer to apmc115r.txt in the readme directory for more information.

---



---

**Note:** You must have successfully completed Step 1 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Chapter 3, before you apply this driver. It uses the exchange rates to upgrade the MRC data.

---



---

## Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
2. Recreate custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information (required)	System Administrator
4. Create contexts and segments for new flexfields (required)	System Administrator
5. Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

## Step 1: Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: Oracle Receivables

TUMS Step Key: AR\_CREATE\_INDEXES\_ON\_TRANS\_COL

Perform this step only if you use AutoInvoice.

Create indexes on the transaction flexfield columns so you can query transaction flexfield information in the invoice headers and lines and speed up validation.

Define *non-unique*, concatenated indexes on the following tables and columns that you use for the Line Transaction Flexfield and the Transaction Flexfield:

Table	Columns
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	interface_header_attribute1-15 interface_header_context

To find columns used for the Line Transaction Flexfield, navigate to the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments) and query the Line Transaction Flexfield. Note each context and which segments are enabled using interface line attribute columns from the RA\_INTERFACE\_LINES\_ALL table.

Then, create non-unique, concatenated indexes for the same interface line attribute columns in the RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_LINES\_ALL and RA\_INTERFACE\_LINES\_ALL tables and for the same interface header attribute columns in the RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_ALL tables.

If you are importing sales credit and accounting information, create indexes for the same interface line attribute columns in the RA\_INTERFACE\_SALESCREDITS\_ALL and RA\_INTERFACE\_DISTRIBUTIONS\_ALL tables. Create these indexes only if you are using these tables to import sales credit and accounting information.

**Additional Information:** See Transaction Flexfields in *Oracle Receivables (or Public Sector Receivables) User's Guide*.

If you have only one context defined, create only one index for each table in the list. However, if you have multiple contexts defined, you may want to create multiple indexes per table, according to your needs. For example, suppose the Line Transaction Flexfield has three contexts set up as follows:

Flexfield Context	Attribute Columns assigned to Enabled Segments
Context1	Interface_line_attribute1
Context1	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute1
Context2	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute9

You could create three indexes per table, one for each context, like this:

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF1 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-2 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF2 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF3 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT1	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-2 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT2	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT3	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

Or, you could create two indexes — one for context3 and another for context2. Context1 uses the index for context2 because context2 has the same first two attribute columns as context1, like this:

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF1 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF2 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT1	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT2	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

Oracle Projects and Oracle Order Management use specific seeded contexts and enabled segments. Create a unique index for each combination of enabled segments. The number of segments differs based on the release level. These indexes assist in the lookups for those products.

**If you have licensed Oracle Projects:**

If users query transactions based on project numbers, create an index RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_PA1 on the following two columns in table RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_ALL: interface\_header\_context and interface\_header\_attribute1.

**If you have licensed Oracle Order Management:**

Create an index RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_LINES\_OE1 on the following two columns in table RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_LINES\_ALL:

- interface\_line\_attribute 1
- interface\_line\_attribute2

Create an index RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_LINES\_OE2 on the interface\_line\_attribute6 column in table RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_LINES\_ALL.

**Additional Information:** See Importing Transactions Using AutoInvoice in *Oracle Receivables (or Oracle Public Sector Receivables) User's Guide*.

**Step 2: Recreate custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

TUMS Step Key: AR\_RECREATE\_CUSTOM\_TAX\_VIEWS

Complete this step if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized any of the following Oracle Tax Vendor Extension views:

View	View
SO_TAX_LINES_SUMMARY_V	SO_TAX_LINES_CREDIT_CHECK_V
TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V	TAX_LINES_RECURRENCE_INVOICE_V
TAX_LINES_ENGINE_REVERSE_V	TAX_LINES_CREATE_V
TAX_LINES_DELETE_V	TAX_ADJUSTMENTS_V

---



---

**Attention:** If your tax vendor is Taxware® Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex® Quantum, and you have implemented descriptive flexfields, you must perform an additional step, as described in *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System*.

---



---

For example, you created a file called custom1.sql, which contains the script for customizing the view TAX\_LINES\_CREATE\_V. Recreate the view by typing the following, where <directory> is the location of custom1 script and <file> is the name of the custom file:

**UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

**Add new columns to views:**

In Step 2 of the Oracle Receivables Tasks in Category 1, you made copies of customized views or created a script to reinstall them. Before reinstalling these views, add the additional columns created in Release 11i. To see how the new views are written, execute the following command:

**UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

To look at the new view, execute the following commands:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool view
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='TAX_LINES_CREATE_V';
SQL> exit
```

This creates a file called `view.lst` that contains the definition of the predefined view. To view the definition, type the following, where `<CUSTOM_VIEW>` is the name of the customized view:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool customview
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='<CUSTOM_VIEW>';
SQL> exit
```

This creates a file called `customview.lst`. Compare its contents with the contents of `view.lst` to see which columns and conditions to add. The structure of the customized view must be exactly the same as the view shipped with Oracle Receivables. For example, the number, order, and data type of each column must be the same as the `TAX_LINES_CREATE_V` view.

#### **Rename customized views:**

To reduce the number of steps in future upgrades and so that installations with multiple organizations can control which users call an installed third-party application for tax calculations, Oracle Receivables uses a naming structure to group views into sets.

---

---

**Note:** Rename *all* customized views to meet the new naming standard.

---

---

To rename a customized view, execute the following commands:

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

The value for `<CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME>` is the name of the customized view. The value for `<NEW_VIEW_NAME>` uses the new naming standard as follows:

<b>View Name</b>	<b>Standard</b>
For Oracle	(no additional naming structure)
For TaxWare(AVP)	_A added to the view name
For Vertex	_V added to the view name
For Custom 1	_1 added to the view name
For Custom 2	_2 added to the view name
For Custom 3	_3 added to the view name
For Custom 4	_4 added to the view name
For Custom 5	_5 added to the view name

For example, the TAX\_LINES\_INVOICE\_IMPORT\_V view has the following naming structure:

<b>View Name</b>	<b>Standard</b>
For Oracle	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V
For Taxware	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_A
For Vertex	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_V
For Custom 1	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_1

### **Step 3: Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>
Reference manual: <b>Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System</b> or <b>Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Receivables</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>AR_UPDATE_TAX_VENDOR_DES_FLEX</b>	

Complete this step if your tax vendor is either Taxware Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex Quantum. In this release, the point of order acceptance, point of order origin, ship-to, ship-from, and tax exemption information must be entered in the Receivables Salesforce, Organization, and System Options windows. Run ar115vdr.sql to copy existing information in the descriptive flexfields to the new Release 11i columns. The script header describes the necessary parameters:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System*. See also *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum*.

**Step 4: Create contexts and segments for new flexfields (required)**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Customer enhancements**TUMS Step Key: **AR\_CREATE\_CONTEXTS\_AND\_SEGMENTS**

The upgrade changes the names of some of the tables containing customer information and also installs new flexfields that refer to the new tables. (After you have completed the installation, the letters OLD are appended to the obsolete flexfields.) In this step, you copy the Context Field Values and the values in the Segments Summary from the old flexfields to the new ones.

The following table lists the new flexfields.

<b>Obsolete Flexfield</b>	<b>New Flexfield</b>
Customer Information OLD	Customer Information
Address Information OLD	Address Information
Site Use Information OLD	Site Use Information
Customer Credit Profile Information OLD	Customer Credit Profile Information
Customer Profile Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Amounts
Telephone Number Information OLD	Telephone Number Information
Contact Role Information OLD	Contact Role Information
Customer Relationship Information OLD	Customer Relationship Information
Remit Address OLD	Remit Address
Credit Profile Class Information OLD	Credit Profile Class Information

<b>Obsolete Flexfield</b>	<b>New Flexfield</b>
Customer Profile Class Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Class Amounts
Contact Information OLD	Contact Information

1. Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfields Segments window. From the system administrator responsibility, choose Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.
2. Query the first new flexfield; for example, Customer Information. After you run the query, the Customer Information flexfield appears, without context information.
3. Without closing the first Descriptive Flexfields Segment window, open a new instance of the same window.
4. Query the old flexfield; for example, Customer Information OLD.
5. Copy the values of the old Context Field Values region into the Context Field Values region of the new flexfield and save your work.
6. Choose the Segments button to open the Segments Summary window for the old flexfield.
7. Copy and paste the values in the old Segments Summary window into the new Segments Summary window.
8. Save your work.
9. Repeat this procedure for each of the remaining new flexfields.

### **Step 5: Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Receivables User Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Receivables
TUMS Step Key: AR_MRC_DATAMODEL_UPG	

Perform this step if you have implemented Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC).

To maintain compatibility, data model changes made to Oracle Receivables require changes to the AR/MRC data model. To upgrade the data model, complete the following steps.

Gain/Loss/Rounding (GLR) accounts can exist in one or more reporting sets of books without being defined in the primary set of books. For the data model upgrade driver to succeed, however, GLR accounts must first be defined for all sets of books.

1. Run the missing Gain/Loss/Rounding (GLR) accounts report:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @armcchk1.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @armcchk1.sql
```

2. Review the report output in file armcchk1.lst. If the output shows missing GLR accounts for sets of books, have an Application Specialist define the missing GLR accounts before you proceed.

**Additional Information:** See Setting Up > Defining Receivables System Options > Accounting System Options in *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

3. Apply the data model upgrade driver darmc115.drv using AutoPatch.

The driver is located in \$AR\_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or in %AR\_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Refer to armc115r.txt in the readme directory for more information.

## Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update customized menus that use JG submenus (conditionally required)	All

### Step 1: Update customized menus that use JG submenus (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials Common Country Features

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JG\_UPDATE\_CUST\_MENU**

---

Oracle Financials Common Country Features now includes a separate, seeded menu for each application within each country, instead of a single, seeded menu for all countries. If you have custom menus that use old menus as submenus, update the custom menus to use the new JG menus instead.

For information on defining menus, refer to Menu Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. For details about the JG menus that are seeded in Release 11i, refer to Oracle Financials Common Country Features, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

## Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Correct existing data before reporting tax information (required)	Korea

### Step 1: Correct existing data before reporting tax information (required)

Perform for this country: **Korea**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific**

Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Korea User Guide**

TUMS Step Key: **JA\_CORRECT\_TAX\_INFO**

---

Before you enter any new transactions in Oracle Payables and Receivables, complete the setup as outlined in the Release 11i *Oracle Financials for Korea User Guide*. You may also want to perform this setup if you want to report on transactions, such as invoices, payments, receipts, withholding and VAT distributions, that existed *before* the upgrade.

Note that since the overall setup, logic, and calculation process that generated the current withholdings and VAT distribution lines may differ from the new functionality, extract and report data used by the Korean Withholding and VAT reports for transactions that were entered *prior* to the upgrade may show calculations that are not consistent with calculations on transactions that are entered *after* the upgrade.

Therefore, you may prefer to report withholdings and VAT only for transactions and respective account distributions that are entered *after* the upgrade date. You can accomplish this by using the GL Date range parameter in the reports.

You may also want to install the online help update 1338864.

## Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update customized menus that use JE submenus (conditionally required)	All

### Step 1: Update customized menus that use JE submenus (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Europe
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes	
TUMS Step Key: JE_UPDATE_CUST_MENU	

Oracle Financials for Europe now includes a separate, seeded menu for each application within each country, instead of a single, seeded menu for all countries. If you have custom menus that use the old menus as submenus, update the custom menus to use the new JE menus instead.

For details about defining menus, see *Menu Window, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. For details about the JE menus that are seeded in Release 11i, see *Oracle Financials for Europe, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

## Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Create new lookup codes (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
2. Set tax system options (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
3. Update sales orders and invoices (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia

Checklist	Perform for this country...
4. Add warehouse name information (conditionally required)	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia
5. Associate tax information for each inventory organization location (conditionally required)	Brazil
6. Associate tax groups and tax categories (conditionally required)	Brazil, Argentina, Colombia
7. Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
8. Archive restored technical appraisals (conditionally required)	Colombia

### Step 1: Create new lookup codes (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**      Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, or 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**      Reference manual: **Oracle Applications User's Guide**

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_CREATE\_NEW\_LOOKUP\_CODES**

From the Application Developers responsibility, use the Application Object Library Lookups window (Application > Lookups > Application Object Library) to create the following lookup codes. Do not enter values in the Start Date Active and End Date Active fields. Check the Enabled check box.

Creating these lookup codes, you can view old transactions.

Lookup Code	Lookup Type	Notes
OBS-TC	JLZZ_AR_TX_CATEGORY	<b>Create only if you are upgrading from Release 11.0 and have not applied update 839884.</b> Assign existing tax codes to this obsolete tax category so that you can successfully query previous tax codes.
OBS-COND	TRANSACTION_ATTRIBUTE	<b>Create only if upgrading from Release 10.7.</b> You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.
OBS-VALUE	JLZZ_AR_TX_ATTR_VALUE	<b>Create only if upgrading from Release 10.7.</b> You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.

**Additional Information:** See Application Utilities Lookups and Application Object Library Lookups in *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

### Step 2: Set tax system options (conditionally required)

---

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**      Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

---

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide; Oracle Receivables User's Guide**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_SET\_TAX\_SYSTEM\_OPTIONS**

---

Set tax system options as part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. If you are using the multi-organization functionality, repeat this step for each organization.

1. Navigate to the System Options window (Argentine Receivables > Standard AR > Setup > System > System Options) or (Colombian Receivables > Oracle Receivables > Setup > System > System Options).
2. In the Tax alternate name region, check the Inclusive Tax Used check box and make sure that the Compound Taxes check box is unchecked.
3. In the Miscellaneous alternate name region, open the globalization flexfield.
4. Enter values in the Country Code, Use Legal Messages, and Tax Rule Set fields.

**Additional Information:** See Define System Options in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*. See also Defining Receivables System Options in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

### Step 3: Update sales orders and invoices (conditionally required)

---

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**      Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

---

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**

Reference manual: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_UPDATE\_SALES\_ORDERS**

---

This step is a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. If you are using multi-organization functionality, repeat this step for each organization.

Before you update sales orders and invoices, create obsolete tax codes, categories, and classes for previous transactions and associate the obsolete tax categories with condition and values so that you can view previously created transactions.

**To create obsolete tax codes, categories, and classes for previous transactions:**

Use the Argentine Receivables or Colombian Receivables responsibility for this step.

**1. Create a tax category.**

In the Latin Tax Categories window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Categories), create a tax category.

In this field...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TC
Effective From	01-JAN-1951
Effective To	31-DEC-4712
Threshold Check Level	Line
Grouping Condition Type	Line
Grouping Condition	Line

**Additional Information:** See Define Tax Categories in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

**2. Create a tax code.**

In the Tax Codes and Rates window (Argentina—Standard AR > Setup > Tax > Codes, or Colombia—Oracle Receivables > Setup > Tax > Codes), create a tax code.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Tax Type	Value Added Tax (VAT)
Taxable Basis	Before Discount
Tax Rate %	0.00
Effective Dates - From	01-JAN-1951
Effective Dates - To	<Leave blank>
Enabled	Checked
Displayed	Checked
Tax Category (in Globalization Flexfield)	OBS-TC

**Additional Information:** See Define Tax Codes and Rates in *Oracle Receivables Tax User's Guide*.

**3.** Create a fiscal classification code.

In the Latin Fiscal Classifications window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Fiscal Classifications), create a fiscal classification code.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Fiscal Classification Code	OBS-FISCAL
Displayed Value	OBS-FISCAL
Description	OBS-FISCAL
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
From Date	01-JAN-1951
To Date	31-DEC-4712
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Enabled	Checked

**Additional Information:** See Define Fiscal Classifications in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

**4.** Create a transaction class.

In the Latin Tax Condition Classes window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Condition Classes), create a transaction class.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Class Type	Transaction Class
Class Code	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Description	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Code	OBS-COND
Value Code	OBS-VALUE
Enabled	Checked

**Additional Information:** See Define Tax Condition Classes for Transactions in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

**To associate obsolete tax category with condition and values:**

In the Associate Latin Tax Category with Conditions and Values window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Conditions and Values), associate tax category OBS-TC with OBS-COND condition and OBS-VALUE value.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Type	Transaction Condition
Condition Name	OBS-COND
Mandatory In Class	Checked
Determining Factor	Checked
Grouping Attribute	Checked
Value	OBS-VALUE
Default To Class	Checked

**Additional Information:** See Associate Tax Categories with Tax Conditions and Values in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

**To update sales orders and invoices:**

Run the following scripts to fill in the Tax Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Condition Class fields with default values for all order lines and invoice lines. The script populates the Tax Code field only if it is blank. Specify the value for Country Code: AR (Argentina) or CO (Colombia).

---

---

**Note:** These are potentially long-running. Plan your upgrade schedule accordingly.

---

---

To update sales orders, run `jlzttu01.sql`. Use `jlzttu01.lst` to review the results.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzttu01.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzttu01.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

To update invoices, run `jlzttu02`. Use `jlzttu02.lst` to review the results.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzttu02.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzttu02.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

**Additional Information:** See *Entering Transactions in Oracle Receivables User's Guide*. See also *Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide* and *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

---

#### **Step 4: Add warehouse name information (conditionally required)**

---

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Brazil, Colombia** Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

---

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_ADD\_WAREHOUSE\_INFO**

---

Warehouse information is mandatory for a transaction *if* the invoice line is an item line, *and* you selected *Latin Tax Handling* as the tax method in the Define System

Options window. If you want to modify upgraded transactions, enter the warehouse in the Warehouse Name field on the Transactions workbench. The warehouse that you enter defines an item validation organization for the ship-from location for this item line.

### **Step 5: Associate tax information for each inventory organization location (conditionally required)**

---

Perform for this country: <b>Brazil</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Receivables)</b>	Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide</b>

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_ASSOCIATE\_TAX\_INFO**

---

Perform this step only if you have *not* applied update 786842 (Inventory org update). This step is part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, enter a valid value for the Organization Class field in the globalization flexfield of the Location window (Standard AR > Setup > System > Organizations > Location). Perform this step for each inventory organization location, if you are using multi-org functionality.

**Additional Information:** See Assign Tax Condition Classes to Organizations, Setting Up Globalization Flexfields in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

### **Step 6: Associate tax groups and tax categories (conditionally required)**

---

Perform for this country: <b>Brazil</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Receivables)</b>	Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide</b>

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_ASSOCIATE\_TAX\_GROUPS**

---

As a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade, perform this step if you *have not* previously applied update 839884.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, use the Latin Tax Groups window (Brazilian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Groups) to set up this association. Ensure that all tax groups have at least one tax category.

**Additional Information:** See Define Tax Group in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

**Step 7: Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices (conditionally required)**

---

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**      Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

---

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**      Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_CANCEL\_UNAPPROVED\_INVOICES**

---

Complete this step only if you *did not* install Latin American country-specific functionality in Release 11. You must re-enter all invoices that were/are to be transferred from the previous period to the new period so that they have the withholding applicability, or the additional information to make the Extended Withholding feature to function correctly.

To activate the Extended Withholding applicability, complete the setup steps described in the Oracle Payables chapter of the *Oracle Financials for Argentina/Colombia User's Guide*.

**Additional Information:** See Cancelling Invoices and Entering Invoices in *Oracle Payables User's Guide*.

**Step 8: Archive restored technical appraisals (conditionally required)**

---

Perform for this country: **Colombia**      Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

---

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Assets)**      Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide**

---

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JL\_ARCHIVE\_RESTORED\_APPRAISALS**

---

Re-archive technical appraisals that you restored in Step 2 of the Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks in Chapter 1.

**Additional Information:** See Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals in *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

## Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

## Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations (required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Update project status values (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Update customized billing extensions (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
4. Review and update billing cycle names (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
5. Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
6. Populate billing title for employee assignments (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
7. Set up the invoice rounding account (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
8. Add new parameters to custom invoice-related client extensions (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
9. Add new parameters to custom transaction control extension (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
10. Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
11. Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
12. Reinstall custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
13. Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

### **Step 1: Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_REVIEW\_ORG\_HIERARCHIES**

In Release 10.7 and earlier, you could control which organizations were used as Project Task Owning/Invoice Organizations by Operating Unit. That is, the same organization could be a Project/Task Owning/Invoice Organization in one

operating unit but not in a different one. This could happen if you had specified different Project Organization Types for the operating units in the PA implementations option.

In Release 11.0 and later, the Project Organization type is not used to identify the organizations that own project/tasks or invoices. Instead, the organization classifications Project/Task Owing Organization and Invoice Organization specified at the organization level are used for this purpose. (Organizations are shared among operating units in a business group). Therefore, after the upgrade, you might have organizations in some operating units that you did not intend to use as Project/Task Owing or Invoice Organizations. Run the following script to determine the organizations that were upgraded under this condition:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

The script paupgor2.sql creates paxupor2.lst in \$PA\_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PA\_TOP%/admin/sql (Windows). It shows the organizations for each operating unit that you designated in Release 10.7 or earlier as project or invoice organizations.

If the report contains any data, define a new organization hierarchy for each related operating unit that does not contain the listed organizations. Then, assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owing or Invoice Organization in the PA Implementation Options.

To build an organization hierarchy:

1. Navigate to the Organization Hierarchy window (Setup > Human Resources > Organizations > Hierarchies).
2. Enter a new organization hierarchy, or copy an organization hierarchy from an existing one and modify it.
3. Save your work.

To assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owing or Invoice Organization:

1. Navigate to the Implementation Options window (Setup > System > Implementation Options).

2. Select the Project Setup tab.
3. Enter the new organization hierarchy you created in the appropriate Organization Hierarchy field - Project/Task owning or Invoice.

**Additional Information:** See Organizations in Oracle Projects, Organization Hierarchy, and Implementation Options in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### **Step 2: Update project status values (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_UPDATE\_PROJ\_STATUS\_VALUES**

You can now enter values for the System Status field in the Project Status window. During the upgrade, Oracle Projects populated each of the user-defined project statuses with the System Status of Upgraded. Update each of these statuses with the appropriate System Status value.

1. Navigate to the Project Statuses window (choose Setup > Projects > Statuses).
2. Query all the records with a System Status of Upgraded.
3. For each of the project statuses displayed, select the appropriate System Status from the list of values. You can also change the status controls (actions allowed for each project status), which were set to default values during the upgrade.
4. Save your changes.
5. Run the query until there are no records with a System Status of Upgraded.

**Additional Information:** See Project Statuses in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### **Step 3: Update customized billing extensions (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_UPDATE\_CUSTOMIZED\_BILLING\_EXT**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and use predefined public procedures in billing extensions.

Oracle Projects provides public procedures to be used in billing extensions. The names of these procedures have been changed to comply with Oracle Applications naming standards. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, modify the extensions to use the new procedure names.

<b>Old Name: package.procedure</b>	<b>New Name: package.procedure</b>
pb_public.insert_event	pa_billing_pub.insert_event
pb_public.insert_message	pa_billing_pub.insert_message
pb_public.get_budget_amount	pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount

In addition, new parameters have been added to the procedures. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in the billing extensions, then add these new parameters to the billing extensions. The new parameters that have been added to the public procedures are:

<b>Package.Procedure</b>	<b>New Parameters</b>
pa_billing_pub.insert_event	x_audit_amount(1-10) x_audit_cost_budget_type_code x_audit_rev_budget_type_code x_error_message x_status
pa_billing_pub.insert_message	x_error_message x_status
pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount	p_cost_budget_type_code p_rev_budget_type_code x_cost_budget_type_code x_rev_budget_type_code x_error_message x_status

**Additional Information:** See Billing Extensions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

**Step 4: Review and update billing cycle names (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**TUMS Step Key: **PA\_REVIEW\_CYCLE\_NAMES**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing.

The project billing cycle data has been upgraded to the enhanced billing cycle model. Billing cycles were created, based on existing projects, as follows:

Billing Cycle Field	Value
Name	Billing Cycle Days: $n$ ( $n$ = the value of Bill Cycle Days)
Type	Bill Cycle Days
Bill Cycle Days	The value of Billing Cycle for a project

Each project was associated with the new billing cycle name. You can change them if necessary:

1. Navigate to the Billing Cycles window (Setup > Billing > Billing Cycle). It displays the Name, Type, Value, and Effective Dates for all billing cycles created during the upgrade.
2. Review the upgraded billing cycle names and change as appropriate. Save your work.

**Additional Information:** See Billing Cycles in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

**Step 5: Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**TUMS Step Key: **PA\_CONVERT\_CUSTOM\_CALC**

Perform this step only if you have implemented Projects Overtime Calculation.

The overtime calculation process was converted to the Overtime Calculation Extension, a PL/SQL procedure in PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls, located in the admin/sql directory. If you have customized PAXDLCOT.rpt, rewrite the customizations in the new files.

**Additional Information:** See Overtime Calculation Extension in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### Step 6: Populate billing title for employee assignments (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_POPULATE\_BILLING\_TITLES**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and implemented employee billing titles for invoice formats.

Oracle Projects now looks for an employee billing title in the TITLE column of the PER\_ASSIGNMENTS\_F table, instead of in the descriptive flexfield column (ASS\_ATTRIBUTE1) of the same table. You must populate the billing title on the employee assignments in the new column. A sample script populates the TITLE column with the contents of the ASS\_ATTRIBUTE1 column and sets the ASS\_ATTRIBUTE1 column to null. If the flexfield has been set up, modify this script appropriately. To run the script:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See Employees and Employee Assignments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### Step 7: Set up the invoice rounding account (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

---

**TUMS Step Key: PA\_SETUP\_INVOICE\_ROUNDING\_ACCT**


---

If you have Project Billing installed, set up the Rounding AutoAccounting Function Transaction for the function Transfer Revenue and Invoice Account, regardless of whether you plan to bill customers in currencies other than the project functional currency.

1. Navigate to the Assign AutoAccounting Rules window (choose Setup > AutoAccounting > Assign Rules).
2. In the Function Name field, select Revenue and Invoice Accounts, then choose Find. The function transactions for Revenue and Invoice Accounts are displayed in the Function Transactions region.
3. Check the Enabled check box to enable the Rounding Account. Enter segment rule pairings to set up the account. Save your work.

**Additional Information:** See AutoAccounting in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

---

**Step 8: Add new parameters to custom invoice-related client extensions (conditionally required)**


---

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

---

**TUMS Step Key: PA\_ADD\_NEW\_PARA\_CUST\_CLIENT\_EXT**

---

Complete this step only if you have Project Billing installed and have customized the Automatic Invoice Approve/Release client extension or the AR Transaction Types client extension.

The following table lists procedures and the file where each is located. If your company uses any of these client extensions, add the new parameters to the client extensions. The files are located in \$PA\_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PA\_TOP%\admin\sql (Windows).

Client Extension	Procedure Name	File
AR Transaction Types	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Transfer.Get_AR_Trx_Type	PAXPTRXB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Approve_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Release_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls

The following parameters have been added to these client extensions:

Parameter Name	Description
p_project_currency_code	project currency code
p_project_amount	project currency amount
p_inv_currency_code	invoice currency code
p_invoice_amount	invoice currency amounts

**Additional Information:** See AR Transaction Types Extension and Automatic Invoice Approval/Release Extension in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### Step 9: Add new parameters to custom transaction control extension (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Projects</b>

If you have customized any of the following Transaction Control extensions in Project Costing, add the associated parameter to the customized extension.

Parameter Name	Description
x_denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
x_denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount
x_acct_currency_code	functional currency code
x_acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

Parameter Name	Description
x_acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_attribute11	descriptive flexfield segment 11
x_attribute15	descriptive flexfield segment 15
x_vendor_id	supplier identifier for supplier invoice transactions
x_msg_application	application identifier for the out message
x_msg_type	type of message (error or warning)
x_token1	token for display with message
x_token2	token for display with message
x_token3	token for display with message

**Additional Information:** See Client Extensions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### Step 10: Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (for advanced users only)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide, Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, and Oracle Project Management User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Projects</b>

Add new columns to the following views.

#### PA\_COMMITMENT\_TXNS\_V

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount
denom_burdened_cost	transaction currency burdened cost amount
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
acct_burdened_cost	functional currency burdened cost amount
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

<b>New Column</b>	<b>Description</b>
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

These columns have been deleted: tot\_cmt\_raw\_cost, tot\_cmt\_burdened\_cost, amount\_delivered.

**PA\_PROJ\_REQ\_DISTRIBUTIONS and PA\_PROJ\_PO\_DISTRIBUTIONS.**

The AMOUNT column has been changed to include non-recoverable taxes.

<b>New Column</b>	<b>Description</b>
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

**PA\_PROJ\_AP\_INV\_DISTRIBUTIONS**

Updated to include rows for non-recoverable tax invoice lines.

<b>New Column</b>	<b>Description</b>
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

New Column	Description
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

The following views in other applications have also been updated to include foreign currency columns and non-recoverable tax amounts:

- CST\_PROMFG\_CMT\_VIEW
- PJM\_REQ\_COMMITMENTS\_V
- PJM\_PO\_COMMITMENTS\_V

**Additional Information:** See Commitments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*, See also *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide* and *Oracle Project Management User's Guide*.

### Step 11: Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Projects</b>

Perform this step only if you use the Transaction Import program in Project Costing.

New columns have been added to the Transaction Interface table (PA\_TRANSACTION\_INTERFACE\_ALL) to support multi-currency transactions and supplier invoices import. If you use the Transaction Import program to import costed transactions, update all custom programs that populate this table. For costed transactions, insert raw cost into the denom\_raw\_cost column, and burdened cost into the denom\_burdened\_cost column. The list of new columns is on Page 25-26 of *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

### Step 12: Reinstall custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>	Performed by: <b>Technical Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Projects User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Projects</b>

You backed up custom client extensions or commitment views in Step 3 of the Oracle Projects Tasks in Chapter 3. Reinstall the customized client extension packages and views in the APPS account.

**Additional Information:** See Client Extensions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### **Step 13: Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

---

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **Oracle Projects**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_CORRECT\_FIFO**

---

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to FIFO marking of expenditure items with scheduled payment events in the Generate Draft Invoices process, for projects using the revenue accrual method Cost or Event. Prior to this upgrade, the Generate Draft Invoices process marked as “billed” all the expenditure items with an expenditure item date earlier than the bill through date of the process. Projects now marks expenditure items for scheduled payment events as “billed”, only up to the event amount.

Run pa630505.sql from the new APPL\_TOP to correct the Billed flag for expenditure items that were incorrectly marked for scheduled payment events.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number.

To reduce processing time, a Start Project Number and an End Project Number to run the script for a range of projects. *Make sure that you run the script for all projects.*

## **Human Resources**

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Human Resources products you have installed.

---



---

**Note:** For information on legislation data, see Post-install Steps, *Implementing Oracle HRMS* or the HRMS online help.

---



---

## Oracle Time and Labor Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Determine corrective actions for Time and Labor (required)	Applications Specialist

### Step 1: Determine corrective actions for Time and Labor (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Applications Specialist

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: Oracle Time and Labor

TUMS Step Key: HXT\_BUSINESS\_GROUP\_REPORT

Run the OTLR Business Group Update report to determine if further actions are necessary to use Oracle Time and Labor functionality. Business decisions about which actions are necessary must be made at this time before you can correctly update the data.

From the Oracle Time and Labor responsibility, run the report from the Processes and Reports menu. The messages in the report are further explained in Output Sample For the OTLR Business Group Update Report on *OracleMetaLink* (Doc ID 235050.1). Some report messages are informational, and some require action. If an action is indicated, perform it as described, then re-run the report. Repeat this cycle until no corrective action messages are reported.

## Oracle Payroll Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run the exchange rate migration script (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
2. Associate a set of books with an organizational payment method (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (HR)

**Step 1: Run the exchange rate migration script (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: Oracle Human Resources

TUMS Step Key: PER\_RUN\_EXCHNGE\_RATE\_MIGRATION

---

In prior releases, exchange rates were stored in the Oracle Payroll exchange rates table (PAY\_EXCHANGE\_RATES\_F). They are now stored in the Oracle General Ledger (GL) exchange rates system.

---

---

**Note:** You do not need Oracle GL in order to make use of the new exchange rate entry form.

---

---

If you use exchange rates, migrate the existing exchange rates from Payroll to General Ledger by running the following script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $PAY_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %PAY_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

From the list of Business Groups, select one to migrate and enter its ID. From the list of payrolls for which exchange rates exist, select the master payroll for this Business Group. To exit, leave blank and press Enter.

An exchange rate for a given date may exist on different payrolls. To prevent this occurrence in GL, existing rates for a given date are overwritten by the new rate. The master payroll is the last payroll rate to be migrated, so the master rate takes precedence for rates on different payrolls.

Select a Conversion Type for the rates to be created. You cannot select the standard GL types, such as Corporate or Spot, to avoid conflict with rates created by other applications. The Conversion Type must begin with HR. If the name you enter does not exist, a new Conversion Type is created.

Enter Y to continue. The system reports the number of rows processed, and the error and rate details of rows that failed.

---



---

**Note:** Perform this step for Oracle Payroll.

---



---

### **Step 2: Associate a set of books with an organizational payment method (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (HR)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Using Oracle HRMS: The Fundamentals</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Human Resources</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>PER_ASS_SOB_ORG_PAYMENT</b>	

This step is required only if your payroll implementation has Cash Management installed. For more information, see Accounting Reference Information for Cash Management Integration, *Implementing Oracle HRMS*.

## **Manufacturing**

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Manufacturing products you have installed.

### **Oracle Cost Management Tasks**

<b>Checklist</b>	<b>Menu Responsibility&gt;function</b>
1. Verify balances in WIP Value reports (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
2. Define default material subelement – Average Costing (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
3. Define Average Rates cost type – Average Costing (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

#### **Step 1: Verify balances in WIP Value reports (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Cost Management and/or Inventory)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Cost Management, Inventory, or WIP</b>

Follow the instructions in Step 2 of the Oracle Cost Management Tasks in Category 3 to run this report. Compare the balances from this report with the balances from the Category 3 report.

**Step 2: Define default material subelement – Average Costing (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Inventory) or Application Specialist (Cost Management)</b>
---------------------------------------	---

---

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Inventory User’s Guide and Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Cost Management</b>
--	---

---

TUMS Step Key: INV\_DEFINE\_AVERAGE\_COSTING

---

If you have defined this subelement previously, omit this step. If you are using Oracle Project Management, as the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Cost. Navigate to the Material Subelements window (Setup > Subelements > Material).

**Additional Information:** See Defining Subelements in *Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide*.

**Step 3: Define Average Rates cost type – Average Costing (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Inventory) / Application Specialist (Cost Management)</b>
---------------------------------------	--

---

Reference manual: <b>Oracle Inventory User’s Guide and Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Cost Management</b>
--	--

---

TUMS Step Key: INV\_DEFINE\_AVERAGE\_RATES

---

If you have previously defined average rates cost types, you can omit this step. This cost type supports material overhead and WIP resources. To define Average Rates costs types, navigate to Setup > Cost Types.

**Additional Information:** See Defining Cost Types in *Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide*.

## Oracle MRP/Supply Chain Planning Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Define sales orders history cutoff date (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning)
2. Start the Planning Manager (required)	Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning)

### Step 1: Define sales orders history cutoff date (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP / Supply Chain Planning)

Reference manual: Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning

Set the MRP:Old Sales Orders Cutoff Days profile option to specify a previous date to be used as a cutoff for sales orders history. The system creates history from the current date back to the date you specify. If you do not provide a value for this profile option, the system uses 9999 — sales history is reported from the current date back 9999 days.

Then, run MRPCLNUP.sql to bring up data from Order Management to Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning for forecast consumption and planning of sales order demand based on the MRP:Old Sales Orders Cutoff Days.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $MRP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @MRPCLNUP.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %MRP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @MRPCLNUP.sql
```

### Step 2: Start the Planning Manager (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP / Supply Chain Planning)

Reference manual: Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning

The Planning Manager performs many tasks that require processing rows in an interface table, such as forecast consumption, master production schedule consumption, forecast interface load, schedule interface load, and master demand schedule relief. After the upgrade, rerun the MPS, MRP, and DRP plans in order to review planning information.

1. Navigate to the Planning Manager window (Setup > Planning Manager).
2. Enter the processing interval for the Planning Manager and click Start.

**Additional Information:** See Starting the Planning Manager and Planning Manager in *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning*.

## Order Management

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

## Oracle Inventory Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Review and correct organization default accounts - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
2. Verify totals in inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

### Step 1: Review and correct organization default accounts - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

Review and correct, as necessary, organization default accounts — sales and expense.

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Inventory. Navigate to the Organization Parameters window (Setup > Organizations > Parameters) and select the Costing Information tabbed region.
2. Update default account information and save your work.

**Additional Information:** See Organization Parameters Window in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

## **Step 2: Verify totals in inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

Run the same inventory valuation reports that you ran in Step 3 of the Oracle Inventory Tasks in Chapter 3 (Elemental Value, Subinventory Value, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value), using the same sort options with the default Release 11i parameters.

The totals by subinventory, subinventory account, cost element, and report totals should match. If they do not, compare the reports for any quantity or value differences, and proceed accordingly. Contact Oracle Support Services if you are unable to balance the reports.

## **Oracle Order Management Tasks**

<b>Checklist</b>	<b>Performed by</b>
<b>1.</b> Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
<b>2.</b> Review upgraded transaction types (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
<b>3.</b> Set up processing constraints (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
<b>4.</b> Set up flexfield definitions (required)	System Administrator
<b>5.</b> Set up Workflow notification approver and update Workflow item attributes (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
<b>6.</b> Generate and review upgrade error report (recommended)	System Administrator/Applications Specialist (Order Management)
<b>7.</b> Review Pricing upgrade errors (recommended)	System Administrator/Applications Specialist (Order Management)

**Step 1: Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator /  
Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping  
User's GuideDo before anyone uses: Order Entry/Shipping

---

AutoUpgrade creates ontupg48.lst. It lists the FND\_USER(created\_by)/Org combinations on all open headers and lines. The list is located in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows), where <SID> is the value of the ORACLE\_SID or TWO\_TASK.

**Creating the list manually:**

If you cannot find this file, run ontupg48.sql manually. The list file (ontupg48.lst) is created in the current directory.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
```

Then, follow these steps:

1. Set up one (or more) OM (or non-OM) responsibilities for order creation/manipulation for every organization. At a minimum, set the ORG\_ID(MO: Operating Unit) profile on these responsibilities (in a multi-org environment). From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Profile > System.
2. Assign appropriate responsibilities to each FND\_USER based on the listing in ontupg48.lst. From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Security > User > Define. If,, for a given FND\_USER there is more than one responsibility pointing to the same organization, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders profile option to Yes on *only one responsibility*. This responsibility, the application tied to it, and the User (who created the Order or line), are used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines as they are processed (in the background).

**For example:** There are 4 distinct users who have access to 3 distinct operating units in which they have created orders or lines.

User ID	Name	Org ID	Organization
1894	NDSMITH	498	Vision ADB
1894	NDSMITH	204	**US** Vision Operations US
1737	ECLARKE	600	Vision Project Manufacturing
1001	VISION	204	**US** Vision Operations JS
2501	DMARTIN	600	Vision Project Manufacturing

You would create 3 new OM or non-OM responsibilities (if you plan to use a custom application on top of OM). Since this example is multi-org, set the MO: Operating Unit profile option to the appropriate value on each of these new responsibilities. And, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders to Yes to flag each one for use in the cycle history upgrade. Assign these new responsibilities appropriately to the 4 users so that they have access to the same organizations that they did in the previous release. This results in only one flagged responsibility per Operating Unit for each of those 4 users. This responsibility, and the application tied to it, are used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines.

3. Validate the responsibilities settings for the user/org combinations you created.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
```

If you find errors in the report (ontupg49.lst), correct the settings and re-run the script to make sure the settings are correct.

---



---

**Attention:** You must correct errors in ontupg49.lst before you complete the next step in order to process affected orders/lines.

---



---

**Step 2: Review upgraded transaction types (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Order Management)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

1. Review the upgraded order and line types. Select Setup > Transaction Types > Define. Because the upgraded assignments cannot be used for new orders or lines, you must create new flow assignments.
2. Review document sequences that were upgraded (based on order number sources in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Define.
3. Review the document categories that were upgraded (based on order types in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Categories.
4. Review the document sequence assignments that were upgraded (based on the order number source assignments in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Assign.

**Step 3: Set up processing constraints (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Order Management)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

To set up processing constraints required for the OM entities, select Setup > Rules > Security > Processing Constraints.

**Additional Information:** *Oracle Order Management User's Guide*

**Step 4: Set up flexfield definitions (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **System Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

The upgrade automatically moves data from descriptive flexfield segments defined in the Order Entry tables to new tables in Order Management and registers new flexfields under Order Management for the new tables. To use this descriptive

flexfield data, define and enable the flexfields according to your business needs. Select Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

### Step 5: Set up Workflow notification approver and update Workflow item attributes (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
Reference manual: Oracle Order Management User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management

Oracle Order Management converts Approval Actions to workflow Notification Activities during the upgrade. The OM:Notification approver profile option determines who receives these notifications. To set up this approval process:

#### Set OM:Notification Approver

Set the value at any level to the desired Application Responsibility or User workflow role. If Order Management cannot find a value for this profile option, it sends approval notifications to SYSADMIN.

---



---

**Note:** If you have multiple Operating Units, set this profile at a Responsibility level to create different Approver Roles for different Operating Units, based on the responsibility you are currently assigned.

---



---

#### Update Workflow Item attributes

Run ontup255.sql to update Workflow Item attributes. This script sets the following workflow item attributes for all open Order Headers and Lines: Responsibility ID, Application ID, Notification Approver.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/ont/11.5.0/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontup255.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\ont\11.5.0\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontup255.sql
```

The Notification Approver item attribute derives its value from the profile option OM:Notification Approver. When a deferred flow is processed, the Workflow Background Engine sets the application context using the Responsibility ID,

Application ID, and User ID workflow item attributes. The User ID workflow attribute value is derived from the user who created the order or line.

### **Step 6: Generate and review upgrade error report (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>System Administrator / Applications Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Order Management User's Guide, Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Order Entry/ Shipping or Shipping Execution</b>

Run the following script generate the upgrade error report:

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

Review ontexc06.lst for errors and recommendations for correcting them.

### **Step 7: Review Pricing upgrade errors (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>System Administrator / Applications Specialist</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Order Entry/ Shipping or Shipping Execution</b>

To query for a list of Pricing upgrade errors, use Setup > View Upgrade Errors. The query lists the modules and supplies a description of each error.

## **Procurement**

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Procurement products you have installed.

## Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Activate transaction managers for Multi-Org (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Upgrade notifications (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
4. Verify and modify sourcing rules (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator / Database Administrator
5. Verify date formats (required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
6. Verify RMA upgrade (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

### Step 1: Activate transaction managers for Multi-Org (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Purchasing in a Multi-Org setup

Requires concurrent manager: Yes

This step applies only to installations that have a Multi-Org setup.

Activate the PO Document Approval Manager and the Receiving Transaction Manager for *each* operating unit:

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the Administer Concurrent Managers window by choosing Concurrent > Manager > Administer.
2. Choose PO Document Approval Manager and then choose Activate. Choose Receiving Transaction Manager and then choose Activate. (If you don't see an Activate button, then the transaction manager is already activated.)

**Additional Information:** See Purchase Order Approval Workflow, Requisition Approval Workflow and Receiving Transaction Processor in *Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide* or *Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*. See also *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*.

**Step 2: Upgrade notifications (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 Character-mode, NCA, 10SC** Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

---

TUMS Step Key: **PO\_UPGRADE\_NOTIFICATIONS**

---

The Notifications Summary window replaces the Notifications window, and all notifications are handled by Oracle Workflow technology. Workflow uses the approval controls and hierarchies you've already defined in Purchasing to route documents for approval. To upgrade notifications so that Release 11i recognizes existing notifications, run the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process after you set up Purchasing.

Upgrade existing notifications only if you currently have Purchasing documents from Release 10.7 that are pending approval.

**Additional Information:** See Viewing and Responding to Notifications and Approval Workflows in *Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide* or *Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*.

**Before you upgrade notifications:**

Be sure to:

- Submit workflow-related processes and verify that all Purchasing documents are either Closed, Finally Closed, Approved, or Incomplete — there should be no In Process documents.
- Reduce the number of existing notifications by responding to as many of them as you can.
- Decide whether to customize your workflow *now*. This upgrade updates notifications by routing them through whatever workflows you have now—for example, the default workflows included with this release of Oracle Purchasing. In general, only those documents that are submitted for approval *after* you customize an approval workflow are affected by that customized workflow. So, if you want the existing notifications to be routed according to a customized workflow, rather than the workflow that comes with this release of Purchasing, customize and test it before you perform these upgrade steps.

**To upgrade existing notifications to Workflow notifications:**

Complete the following steps for each operating unit.

1. Select Purchasing > Reports > Run.

2. In the Requests window, select Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 in the Request Name field and choose Submit Request.
3. After the process is complete (when it has changed from Pending to Completed in the Requests window), select it in the Requests window and choose View Output. If you see errors about workflow not being set up properly, see the *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide* for instructions.
4. The workflow process notifies the appropriate people of errors in the upgrade. Document preparers and approvers can monitor these notifications in the Notifications Summary window and take action as necessary.
5. After all notifications are upgraded, you may want to disable the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process so that no one tries to use it later. As the System Administrator, uncheck the Enabled check box in the Concurrent Programs window.

**Additional Information:** See Concurrent Programs Window in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

### **Step 3: Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Character-mode	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
--	---

Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing
----------------------	-----------------------------------

TUMS Step Key: PO_SET_MRP_PROFILE
-----------------------------------

In Step 1 of the Oracle Purchasing Tasks in Chapter 3, you could not modify the default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set for a character-based system. Provide values for these profile options now, before you continue with the next step.

### **Step 4: Verify and modify sourcing rules (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Character-mode, NCA, 10SC	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration / Database Administrator
---	---

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing
--	-----------------------------------

TUMS Step Key: PO_VERIFY_SOURCING_RULES
---

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, omit this step.

AutoUpgrade converted all existing AutoSource rules to the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries. Specifically, it:

- Created sourcing rule entries in the Sourcing Rule window in Purchasing, using the percentage splits you previously defined in the AutoSource Rules window.
- Created global ASL entries, using the previous AutoSource rules.
- Assigned a supplier status of New to all suppliers in the Approved Supplier List window.
- Upgraded source documents with current effective dates, as well as dates that don't become effective until a future time.

**To verify or modify sourcing rules:**

Use any text editor to check the upgrade.out file for errors that might have occurred during the AutoUpgrade process. This file is located in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX), where <SID> is the value of the \$ORACLE\_SID or \$TWO\_TASK, in %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows), where <SID> is the value of the ORACLE\_SID or LOCAL.

Fix errors as described in the file. Then, run the ASL Upgrade process in Purchasing. If there are no errors, proceed to the next step.

**If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 character-mode:**

AutoUpgrade records an error in the upgrade.out file. Because the MRP profile options could not be set before the upgrade, run the ASL Upgrade process now. It performs the same upgrade of AutoSource rules as AutoUpgrade.

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, navigate to Reports > Run and select ASL Upgrade in the Request Name field. In the Parameters window, enter a Supplier Status of New and an Upgrade Documents From option of Current and Future Rules. Then submit the request. *New* and *Current and Future Rules* are the only options supported by the ASL Upgrade process.
2. To verify that the AutoSource rules have been upgraded, open the Requisitions window in Purchasing and, in the Item field, enter an item number that previously had an AutoSource rule. Navigate to the Source Details tabbed region. If the correct Document Type, Document, Supplier and supplier Site appear as defaults, AutoSource rules have been successfully updated.
3. Disable the ASL Upgrade process. In the System Administrator responsibility, uncheck the Enabled check box in the Concurrent Programs window.

**Additional Information:** See Concurrent Programs Window in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

4. To make changes, additions, or enhancements to sourcing rules and ASL entries, use the Purchasing responsibility to navigate to the Define Supplier Statuses, Approved Supplier List, Sourcing Rule, and Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments windows.

**Additional Information:** See Setting Up Automatic Sourcing in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*.

### Step 5: Verify date formats (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration**

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

During the upgrade, the REVISSED\_DATE column in the Purchasing tables was changed from a Varchar2 to a Date format, and existing date information was moved from the REVISSED\_DATE column to a temporary table TEMP\_REVISSED\_DATE. After the column is converted to a Date format, the upgrade script copies the original dates from TEMP\_REVISSED\_DATE back into the affected tables. The TEMP\_REVISSED\_DATE table still contains the original data as a backup.

Before you run podold.sql (see Step 1 of the System Maintenance Tasks in Chapter 7), which drops unneeded database objects including the TEMP\_REVISSED\_DATE table, review the following lists, located in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows):

```
po_headers_all.lst
po_headers_archive_all.lst
po_releases_all.lst
po_releases_archive_all.lst
```

Each file displays the format (data type) of the REVISSED\_DATE column and a list of dates in the affected table. Verify that the *data type* of REVISSED\_DATE is Date, and verify the dates themselves. Contact Oracle Support Services if you have problems.

#### Create the lists manually:

If the files have no output, you can create the lists manually.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/admin/sql/pockrvdt.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APP:_TOP%\admin\>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\admin\sql\pockrvdt.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password>
```

The output is located in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\

**Step 6: Verify RMA upgrade (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration</b>
Reference manual: <b>No</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Receiving</b>

If you used return material authorizations (RMAs) in the previous release to authorize and receive customers' returns using Oracle Order Entry and Oracle Inventory, complete these steps to verify the RMA upgrade.

**Review status of processed transactions:**

Review the following list files created during the upgrade. They are located in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\

```
rcv_rma_upgrade_errors.lst
rcv_rma_upgrade_success.lst
```

If the files contain no output, review these tables generated during the upgrade:

- RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_SUCCESS: successfully processed transactions
- RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_ERRORS: transactions that were not upgraded due to errors

The RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_SUCCESS table contains the following information:

Column	Description
CREATION_DATE (DATE)	Date the record was created
RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)	Indicator of whether the error was logged during the first upgrade (FIRST-RUN) or subsequently (RE-RUN)
RMA_INTERFACE_ID (NUMBER)	Internal unique interface identifier from the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table

Column	Description
SHIPMENT_HEADER_ID (NUMBER)	Shipment header identifier of the transaction generated in the Purchasing receiving tables

The RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_ERRORS table contains the following information:

Column	Description
CREATION_DATE (DATE)	Date the record was created
RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)	Indicator of whether the error was logged during the first upgrade (FIRST-RUN) or subsequently (RE-RUN)
RMA_INTERFACE_ID (NUMBER)	Internal unique interface identifier from the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table
ERR_NUMBER (NUMBER)	
ERR_MESSAGE (VARCHAR2)	

The upgrade transfers RMA all receipt data from Inventory to Purchasing. It logs all errors and continues upgrading the rest of the transactions.

---

**Note:** If the RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_ERRORS table or the RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_SUCCESS table already exists (for example, if you re-ran the upgrade), the upgrade script assumes a re-run and processes only the transactions with errors from the RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_ERRORS table.

---

#### Fix errors:

Fix errors listed in RCV\_RMA\_UPGRADE\_ERRORS, and re-run the RMA upgrade script. You can ignore errors about old or obsolete data.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $PO_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvrmaup.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PO_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvrmaup.sql
```

## Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

### Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Verify AutoAccounting rules (required)	Technical Specialist / Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)
2. Set up AutoAccounting for Burden transactions (required)	Technical Specialist / Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)
3. Set up expenditure types for Burden transactions (required)	Technical Specialist / Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)

#### Step 1: Verify AutoAccounting rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0      Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide**      Do before anyone uses: **Grants Accounting**

TUMS Step Key: **GMS\_VERIFY\_ACCTG\_RULES\_AWARD\_INFO\_SQL**

Grants Accounting (formerly known as Grants Management), Award ID is now stored in a separate table (GMS\_AWARD\_DISTRIBUTIONS), and no longer in the ATTRIBUTE1 column in the PA\_EXPENDITURE\_ITEMS\_ALL table. If you referred to the ATTRIBUTE1 column from PA\_EXPENDITURE\_ITEMS\_ALL in any of the AutoAccounting Rules SQL statements, change the SQL to reference the AWARD\_ID column in the GMS\_AWARD\_DISTRIBUTIONS table instead.

**Note:** See *Grants Accounting eTRM (Electronic Technical Reference Manual)* for more information.

#### Step 2: Set up AutoAccounting for Burden transactions (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7      Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide**      Do before anyone uses: **Grants Accounting**

TUMS Step Key: **GMS\_SETUP\_AUTOACCTG\_BURDEN\_TXACTS**

Set up the AutoAccounting rules for the Burden Cost account and Burden Cost Clearing account:

1. Navigate to the Assign AutoAccounting Rules window (Setup > AutoAccounting > Assign Rules).
2. In the Function Name field, select Burden Cost Account, and choose Find. View the associated function transactions in the Function Transactions region.
3. Check the Enabled check box to enable the appropriate function transaction names. Enter segment rule pairings to set up the account. Save your work.
4. Repeat these steps for the Burden Cost Clearing function.

**Additional Information:** See AutoAccounting in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

### **Step 3: Set up expenditure types for Burden transactions (required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Grants Accounting**

TUMS Step Key: **GMS\_SETUP\_EXPEND\_TYPES\_BURDEN\_TXACTS**

Modify the burden expenditure types setup to use the new Burden Transaction expenditure type class:

1. Navigate to the Expenditure Types window (Setup > Expenditures > Expenditure Types).
2. For all burden expenditure types, add the Burden Transaction type class in the Expenditure Type field. Add an end date to the Usages expenditure type class so that these expenditure types do not appear in the list of values for Pre-Approved Batch window.
3. Save your work.
4. Repeat these steps for each burden expenditure type.

**Additional Information:** See Expenditure Definitions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

## Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate data to new tables (required)	Technical Specialist

### Step 1: Migrate data to new tables (required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: **2.0, 3.3**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

---

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Federal Financials**

---

TUMS Step Key: **FV\_MIGRATE\_DATA**

---

For Version 2.0 and 3.3, migrate U.S. Federal setup data to the new tables. Review `fvupdata.log` for errors.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdata.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdata.sql
```

## Sales and Marketing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Sales and Marketing products you have installed.

## Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks

If you have implemented Oracle Sales or Oracle Sales Compensation, review Oracle *MetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional pre-upgrade steps.

## Service

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Service products you have installed.

## Oracle Service Tasks

If you have implemented Oracle Service, review *OracleMetaLink* note 236954.1 and perform the additional pre-upgrade steps.



---

---

## Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

This chapter describes Category 6 steps — you can use the Oracle Applications products, but you cannot use certain features until you complete the appropriate steps. The feature(s) affected are listed in the summary lines following each step.

- Implementation and Setup Tasks on page 6-2
- System Administration Tasks on page 6-3
- Application Object Library Tasks on page 6-3
- Oracle Alert Tasks on page 6-7
- Oracle Cash Management Tasks on page 6-8
- Oracle General Ledger Tasks on page 6-8
- Oracle Payables Tasks on page 6-15
- Oracle Receivables Tasks on page 6-19
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks on page 6-21
- Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks on page 6-26
- Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks on page 6-29
- Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks on page 6-33
- Oracle Projects Tasks on page 6-35
- Oracle Human Resources Tasks on page 6-36
- Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks on page 6-38
- Oracle Inventory Tasks on page 6-39

- Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks on page 6-41

## All Products

Product-specific implementation or setup steps are an integral part of the upgrade. These steps may be needed to "turn on" new functionality added during the upgrade process or set up new product features.

### Implementation and Setup Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Review product-specific documentation (required)	Application Specialists

#### **Step 1: Review product-specific documentation (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialists**

Reference manual: **Product-specific users guides**

Do before anyone uses: **All Oracle products**

---

Before you begin the Category 6 steps, review the product-specific documentation for the products you have installed to see if there are any implementation or setup steps that must be performed to "turn on" or implement new features of products that were added during the upgrade process.

1. Determine which products you have installed.
2. Make sure you have the product documentation for each product.
3. Review the implementation and/or setup information in the product guides.
4. Perform the steps that are appropriate for your system.

## Applications Technology

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks *before* you perform the product-specific tasks.

## System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Review user responsibility assignments (recommended)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Review user responsibility assignments (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Reports**

Although user/responsibility assignments are preserved during the upgrade, the effective permissions granted by the seeded responsibilities, menus, functions, and report security groups may have changed. Use the information on the Forms or Security reports in the System Administrator responsibility to confirm that permissions granted by responsibilities continue to meet the requirements of the job roles (without granting more privileges than are necessary.)

**Additional Information:** See Organizing Programs into Request Groups in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

## Application Object Library Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
2. Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS_TL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
3. Rename the srw directory (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
4. Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
5. Copy custom .fmb files to AU_TOP (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
6. Convert messages for custom applications (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
7. Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

### Step 1: Update custom code using flexfield values in FND\_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom Flexfields-related code**

During the upgrade, lowercase flexfield-related lookup codes in FND\_LOOKUPS (and in the related flexfields columns in AOL tables) are replaced with new uppercase codes. If you have customizations that use these lookup codes (from FND\_LOOKUPS or from the flexfield tables directly), change the customizations to use these new values.

The following table shows the LOOKUP\_TYPE used in FND\_LOOKUPS, the corresponding flexfields table and columns that use the changed value, the old lookup value used in FND\_LOOKUPS and the flexfield table, and the new value. Evaluate the custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) to assess whether it uses these values. Modify the code accordingly.

Lookup Type	Table Name	Column	Old Value	New Value
FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	FND_FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	EVENT_CODE	e	O
FIELD_TYPE	FND_FLEX_VALUE_SETS	FORMAT_TYPE	t	I
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_ID_FLEX_SEGMENTS	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_DESCR_FLEX_COLUMN_USAGES	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A

### Step 2: Update custom calls to FND\_DESCR\_FLEX\_CONTEXTS\_TL (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom flexfields-related code**

Oracle Applications added the DESCRIPTIVE\_FLEX\_CONTEXT\_NAME column to the FND\_DESCR\_FLEX\_CONTEXTS\_TL table to aid in the translation of context field values for descriptive flexfields. AutoUpgrade populates this column based on the codes in FND\_DESCR\_FLEX\_CONTEXTS. Modify any custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) that accesses FND\_DESCR\_FLEX\_CONTEXTS\_TL or FND\_DESCR\_FLEX\_CONTEXTS to account for this new column and its values.

**Step 3: Rename the *srw* directory (conditionally required)**


---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7      Performed by: **Technical Specialist / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**                      Do before anyone uses: **Custom application**


---

To accommodate the new report products used in Oracle Applications, change the name of the *srw* directory to *reports* for each custom application.

**Step 4: Copy custom forms libraries to AU\_TOP (conditionally required)**


---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0                      Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**                      Do before anyone uses: **Custom applications**


---

Copy custom forms libraries (.pll) to the resource directory under AU\_TOP. Complete this step before regenerating custom forms.

**Step 5: Copy custom .fmb files to AU\_TOP (conditionally required)**


---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0                      Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**                      Do before anyone uses: **Custom applications**


---

Put copies of custom .fmb files in the \$AU\_TOP/forms/<language> (UNIX) or %AU\_TOP%\forms\<language> (Windows). Keep the original copies of the forms \$COMMON\_TOP/forms/<language> (UNIX) or %COMMON\_TOP%\forms\<language> (Windows) in a safe place.

**Step 6: Convert messages for custom applications (conditionally required)**


---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 (character mode)      Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**                      Do this before anyone uses: **Custom applications**


---

If you defined custom Message Dictionary messages using a custom application name in the character-mode Define Messages form (because character-mode custom applications use Message Dictionary), convert them to GUI format to continue using messages.

The FNDMDCVT program copies all of the messages for the application in the FND\_MESSAGES table, concatenates the extended message text on the message text, and removes the special formatting codes in the old messages to produce plain text. It then inserts the new messages into the FND\_NEW\_MESSAGES table. If a

message with that name, language, and application already exists in the FND\_NEW\_MESSAGES table, the insert fails and the previously existing row is left alone. Only U.S. language messages are transferred by this converter.

To convert messages, follow these steps, where <APPL\_SHORT\_NAME> is the application short name for which you want messages converted. Run this script once for each custom application.

1. Make sure that FND\_TOP/bin is in your PATH, and run FNDMDCVT from the command prompt:

```
FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
```

2. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to Application > Messages. Query the messages for the application and verify that they were converted successfully. Adjust special formatting, as necessary. For example, delete old formatting text that was incorrectly entered.
3. To generate the Message Dictionary runtime message file, run FNDMDGEN for each custom application, where LANG\_SHORT\_NAME is the language short name (such as US) and APPL\_SHORT\_NAME is the application short name for which you want the message file generated:

```
FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \  
<APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
```

### Step 7: Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do this before anyone uses: **Custom concurrent program libraries**

---

To accommodate the new form of concurrent program libraries, regenerate, recompile, and re-link the customized concurrent program libraries.

1. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Program Libraries form (Concurrent > Library).
2. Query the custom library and press Generate.

This submits a concurrent request that creates a file named <libraryname>.c in the lib directory under the application product tree to which the program library belongs. For example, library CUSTLIBR, a custom program

(CUSTLIBR.c) registered under application Custom Application with a basepath `XXCST_TOP`, is generated in the lib directory under `XXCST_TOP`.

3. Compile the file using `$FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile` (UNIX) or `%FND_TOP%\usrxit\Makefile` (Windows) and relink using `adrelink`.
4. Place the executable in the `/bin` directory for the appropriate product.

**Additional Information:** See Concurrent Programs in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. See also *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

## Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Associate organization names with custom Alert definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Re-create event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Associate organization names with custom Alert definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Alert)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Alert User's Guide</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Alert definition</b>

Manually update custom alerts that you want to assign to a particular organization:

1. As the Alerts Manager, navigate to the Alerts form (Alert > Define) and query the definition.
2. Choose Alert Details, then display the Installations tabbed region in the Alert Details window.
3. Enter the ORACLE ID and organization name that you want to run this alert against.
4. Make sure you check Enabled before you save your changes.

**Step 2: Re-create event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**Performed by: **Database Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Do before anyone uses: **Custom Alerts**

Re-create custom alerts dropped in Step 1 of the Oracle Alert Tasks in Chapter 3.

## Financial

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financial products you have installed.

### Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Reinstall custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

**Step 1: Reinstall custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)**Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Technical Specialist**Reference manual: **Financials Open Interface Reference, Oracle Cash Management User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Reconciliation Open Interface**TUMS Step Key: **CE\_999\_RESTORE**

Perform this step only if you have implemented and customized the Reconciliation Open Interface.

In Step 1 of the Oracle Cash Management Tasks in Chapter 1, you backed up the customized copies of CE\_999\_INTERFACE\_V (view), and CE\_999\_PKG (package). Reinstall these customized copies to the database in the APPS account.

### Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program (required)	Application Specialist (GL)

Checklist	Performed by
2. Ensure that account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
3. Review period rates (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
4. Review AutoPost criteria (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
5. Define GIS conversion rates and rate types (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
6. Verify program submission parameters for Mass Funds Check/Reservation (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
7. Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
8. Set up Intercompany Balancing (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)

### Step 1: Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Application Specialist (GL)

Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Segment Value Inheritance program

TUMS Step Key: GL\_PRESERVE\_ACC\_COMBINATIONS

You can automatically replicate any changes you make to segment value attributes (Detailed Posting, Detailed Budgeting, Effective Date Ranges, and the Enabled flag) to all account combinations that contain that segment value by running the Segment Value Inheritance program. For example, if you disable a particular cost center in the chart of accounts, you can also require that all account combinations that contain that cost center be automatically disabled.

To protect specific account combinations from being affected by this program:

1. In the GL Accounts window (Setup > Accounts > Combinations), find the account combinations you want to preserve.
2. Select the Preserved check box for all combinations that you want to save and save your work.

## Step 2: Ensure that account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Database Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)

Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Summary Accounts, Financial Analyzer Integration

TUMS Step Key: GL\_REVIEW\_ACC\_TYPES

---



---

**Attention:** This step is *required* if you use summary accounts in General Ledger *and* use Oracle Financial Analyzer to analyze GL account information. This step is *highly recommended* if you use summary accounts but not Financial Analyzer.

---



---

In Release 10.7, the natural account type for summary accounts was automatically set to Owners' Equity. Now, summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value. You must ensure that all the account segment values—even parent values—have the correct account type. Otherwise, summary accounts will be incorrectly classified.

For example, if you define a parent account value (1999) — the total of all asset accounts — set the account type for the parent segment value 1999 to Asset. When you subsequently define a summary account using this segment value, the summary account is correctly defined as an asset.

---



---

**Note:** If the parent segment value is T, account type is not meaningful and does not need to be changed. If you use dependent account segments and have difficulty completing this step, contact Oracle Support Services.

---



---

Correctly setting the account type for account segment values ensures that the summary balances are displayed correctly if you choose to perform additional analysis using Oracle Financial Analyzer. To ensure that account segment values use the correct account type, complete the following steps.

1. In the Key Flexfields Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Key > Segments), unfreeze all account structures that reference the account segment.

2. In the Value Sets window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Validation Sets), query the value set Name for the natural account segment. Optionally, query the segment values that you use for summary accounts. When you have entered the query values, choose Find. The Segment Values window appears.
3. Choose Hierarchy, Qualifiers from the pop list.
4. For each account segment value you use in the summary accounts, open the Segment Qualifiers window and review the setting for Account Type.
5. Change the account types and save your work.
6. Use the Key Flexfields Segments window to refreeze all account structures that reference the account segment.
7. Propagate the changes you made to Oracle General Ledger:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

**Step 3: Review period rates (conditionally required)**


---

 Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0

 Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**


---

 Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide**, Do before anyone uses: **Period Rates**  
**Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**


---

 TUMS Step Key: **GL\_REVIEW\_PERIOD\_RATES**


---



---



---

**Attention:** Do not perform this step if you have applied the mini-packs for Release 11.02 or 11.03.

---



---

Run the Maintain Euro Period Rates program for each set of books that satisfies *both* of the following criteria:

- The set of book's functional currency is the euro or a currency participating in the Economic and Monetary Union, or period rates have been entered between the set of book's functional currency and the euro.

- The period containing January 1, 1999 is open or can be entered in the future for that set of books, or the budget year containing January 1, 1999 is open for a budget in that set of books.

From the General Ledger responsibility for a specific set of books:

1. Navigate to Reports > Request > Standard.
2. Choose to submit a single request.
3. Select Program - Maintain Euro Period Rates and click Submit.

#### **Step 4: Review AutoPost criteria (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide**, **Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **AutoPost**

TUMS Step Key: **GL\_REVIEW\_AUTOPOST\_CRITERIA**

You use AutoPost criteria to automatically post journal batches that have specific combinations of journal source, period, and account type. In previous releases, you defined only one set of criteria for AutoPost, and you had to redefine it in order to change the priorities of the set of components.

If you used AutoPost and defined criteria in Release 10.7, you can now define multiple AutoPost criteria per set of books, and then schedule AutoPost to run at different times and submission intervals for each criteria set you have defined.

During the upgrade, the AutoPost criteria you have defined are grouped in a criteria set (called Standard) for each set of books. Review this criteria, and then submit and schedule the AutoPost runs using the Submit Request window. Provide the Criteria Set name as a run parameter.

**Additional Information:** See Posting Journal Batches Automatically in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

#### **Step 5: Define GIS conversion rates and rate types (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide**, **Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Global Intercompany System (GIS)**

TUMS Step Key: **GL\_DEFINE\_GIS\_RATES**

In earlier releases, GIS subsidiaries could use either period rates or daily rates when transferring foreign currency journals. Now, GIS subsidiaries use only daily rates. Therefore, you must specify conversion rate types and daily conversion rates for each of the subsidiaries.

**To define conversion rate types:**

1. In the Conversion Rate Types window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Types), enter a Name and Description for the new conversion rate type.
2. Save your work.

**To define conversion rates:**

1. In the Daily Rates window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily), enter the From Currency — the currency you want to convert from using the rates you enter. General Ledger automatically displays the functional currency for the set of books as the To Currency — the currency you want to convert to.
2. Enter the Conversion Date and Type.
3. Enter the conversion rate and save your work.

---



---

**Note:** Set the profile option Daily Rates Window: Enforce Inverse Relationship During Entry to Yes to have the rates displayed in both columns to show the inverse relationship.

---



---

**Step 6: Verify program submission parameters for Mass Funds Check/Reservation (conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Application Specialist (GL)

Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide,  
Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Mass Funds  
Check/Reservation program

TUMS Step Key: GL\_VERIFY\_MASS\_FUNDS\_SUBMISSION

Perform this step if you previously used Mass Approvals (renamed Mass Funds Check/Reservation in Release 11*i*) in Release 10.7.

Use the Mass Funds Check/Reservation program to check or reserve funds for unposted journal batches. In Release 10.7, GL used the Automatic Posting options to prioritize the funds check and reservation. You must now specify the AutoPost criteria set as a parameter when you run Mass Funds Check/Reservation. If you have used Standard Request Submission to set the program to run at specific

intervals, cancel this setting and create a new one. Enter new program parameters and specify an appropriate AutoPost criteria set.

**Additional Information:** See *Running the Mass Funds Check/Reservation Program* in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

### **Step 7: Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Enter Journals**

TUMS Step Key: **GL\_SET\_FUNCTION\_SECURITY**

In Release 10.7, function security for journal posting in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows was enabled with the profile option Journals: Allow Posting During Journal Entry.

Use the Oracle Applications standard Function Security features in System Administration to restrict user access to journal posting and reversing functions. If you do not specifically exclude them from selected responsibilities, all users have access to Enter Journals: Post and Enter Journals: Reverse.

**Additional Information:** See *Overview of Function Security* in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

### **Step 8: Set up Intercompany Balancing (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0

Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Intercompany Balancing**

TUMS Step Key: **GL\_SETUP\_INTERCOMPANY\_BALANCING**

If you have previously designed your account structure with an additional segment that uses the Balancing Segment value set, you have a one-time opportunity to assign the Intercompany segment qualifier to this segment.

For additional information, see: *Accounting for Multiple Companies Using a Single Set of Books, Setting Up General Ledger > Designing Your Accounting Flexfield*,

Setting Up General Ledger > Defining Intercompany Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* and *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

## Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Set up Offset taxes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Set up the future-dated payment account (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Set up recoverable taxes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
4. Link GL records and AP records (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

### Step 1: Set up Offset taxes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Tax Codes (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables Offset Taxes
TUMS Step Key: AP_SETUP_OFFSET_TAXES	

Perform this step only if the previous installation had default Offset taxes set at the supplier site. Offset taxes do not default to new distributions unless you perform this step.

The default Offset tax is now associated with a Sales or User-defined tax. AutoUpgrade automatically enabled the new Use Offset Taxes check box for supplier sites with a default Offset tax assigned. This means when you enter a tax code with an active associated Offset Tax code, Payables automatically creates an Offset tax distribution.

Run apofftax.sql to create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report. It lists for each organization all combinations of defaults for tax code and Offset tax code that you have set at the supplier site level and each supplier site that uses a combination.

Review the report to determine where to assign active Offset taxes to active Tax Codes. You may need to duplicate and rename a tax code if it is paired with more than one Offset tax. For example, supplier site A has Tax1 and Offset Tax1 set as defaults, and supplier site B has Tax1 and Offset Tax2 set as defaults. Duplicate and rename Tax1 so you can assign Offset Tax2 to it, and then assign the new tax to supplier site B.

1. Create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
```

2. Review the report and identify any tax codes you need to duplicate and rename, or identify the Offset taxes you need to associate with tax codes.
3. Navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Taxes > Tax Codes).
4. If you had Sales or User-defined tax codes associated with more than one Offset tax, duplicate and rename them.
5. Query each Sales or User-defined tax code that you want to associate with an Offset tax code.
6. In the Offset Tax field, enter an active Offset tax code and save your work.
7. Update supplier sites that had tax code defaults associated with more than one Offset tax. Navigate to each supplier site (Suppliers > Entry). Choose the Sites button). Change the default tax code to the duplicated and renamed tax code.
8. Save your work.

**Step 2: Set up the future-dated payment account (conditionally required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables)</b>
---------------------------------------	--

---

Reference manual: <b>Future Dated Payments (Oracle Payables User's Guide)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Payables Future Dated Payments</b>
---	---

---

TUMS Step Key: **AP\_SETUP\_FUTURE\_DATED\_PAYMENT\_ACCT**

---

Perform this step only if you want to use future-dated payments in Release 11i.

Payables added fields for the future-dated payment account in the Financials Options, Suppliers (only if you do not use Multi-org), Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts windows. It also renamed the field in the Payment Documents window. Perform this step to populate the new future-dated payment account fields.

If you previously used future-dated payments, the upgrade performs these actions for each payment document:

- Defaults the account you had defined in the Cash Clearing field of the Payment Documents window to the Future Dated Payment (account) field in the Payment Documents window
- Sets the Future Date Use option to Allowed in the Payment Documents window

In the Payables Options window, specify whether you want to use the supplier site or payment document account when Payables accounts for Future Dated Payments. If no value is set, AutoUpgrade automatically sets this parameter to Payment Document.

To populate the new fields:

1. In the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials), for each organization, enter a value for the Future Dated Payment (account) and save your work.
2. Run the following script to populate the Future Dated Payment account field for Suppliers, Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts. The script updates all organizations. It prompts for a batch size for the commit cycle.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
```

3. Reset any values for Future Dated Payment account in the Supplies, Supplier Sites, Bank Accounts, and Payment Document windows and save your work. See *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for more information.

### Step 3: Set up recoverable taxes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Financials Options, Recoverable Tax (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Recoverable Tax (in either Payables or Purchasing)
TUMS Step Key: AP_SETUP_RECOVERABLE_TAXES	

This step is necessary *only* for those operating units where you have set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes (Step 3 of Oracle Payables Tasks in

Chapter 2). Refer to *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for details, but at a minimum, do the following.

1. Navigate to the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials). In the Tax tabbed region, enter a value in the Default Recovery Rate field. For example, if you want taxes to be 100% recoverable, enter 100. You can override this value when you set up the tax codes.
2. To set up or review tax code recoverability, navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Tax > Codes). Review the recovery rate of each tax code and ensure that it is set correctly. For example, if you want a tax to be 100% recoverable, set the recovery rate to 100. If you want a tax to be non-recoverable (such as for U.S. state and local taxes), set the recovery rate to 0.
3. Save your work.

#### **Step 4: Link GL records and AP records (required)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Payables)</b>
Reference manual: <b>Accounting (Oracle Payables User's Guide)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Drill down functionality from GL to Payables</b>

---

TUMS Step Key: **AP\_LINK\_TO\_GL**

---

When GL records and AP records are linked, you can drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding subledger accounting entries in Payables.

To link the records, run `apallink.sql`. The script takes two parameters: Start Date and End Date. It updates all accounting entry lines for invoices and checks in that date range. You can run it multiple times, for example, in small date ranges to manage system resources. We recommend you begin with the most recent data and work backwards until the entire pre-Release 11i date range has been updated. You cannot drill down between updated records and non-updated records. But, having non-updated records does not affect other functions, such as data entry. Enter dates as DDD/MM/YYYY.

#### **UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

#### **Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

## Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
2. Link GL and AR records and set Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries code combinations (required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)

### Step 1: Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0      Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**      Do before anyone uses: **AutoInvoice or Transactions window**

TUMS Step Key: **AR\_DEFINE\_GL\_TAX\_ASSIGN\_FOR\_NATURAL**

To use the Account Method for Value Added Tax (VAT) compliance, set up Receivables to use the tax code assigned to the Natural Account segment of the Revenue account when you manually enter transactions or import them using AutoInvoice.

**Additional Information:** See Controlling Tax from your Revenue Account and Implementing Value Added Tax in *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*.

**Note:** Do not perform this step if you have already completed it as part of the Oracle Payables or Oracle General Ledger upgrade. *If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for each organization.*

### Step 2: Link GL and AR records and set Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries code combinations (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0      Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**      Do before anyone uses: **Drill down functionality from GL to Receivables**

TUMS Step Key: **AR\_LINK\_TO\_GL**

When GL records and Receivables records are linked, you can drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding subledger accounting entries in Receivables. You can also drill down from GL journal Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries to the subledger.

To link GL and A/R records and set the code combinations of the Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries to match the code combinations in the GL journal, use the following scripts:

- `argicind.sql`. Creates an index on the `gl_import_references` table that enhances the performance of `ar115gic.sql`. It may take a long time to run, depending on the volume of data in `gl_import_references`.
- `ar115gic.sql`. Takes one parameter, number of `Bulk_fetch_rows`. It then fetches and updates that number of rows at one time. A commit is issued once for every bulk fetch, so set the rollback segment size accordingly. You can run this script multiple times if necessary.

---

---

**Important:** Enter the fetch size according to the volume of the AR data in the `gl_import_references` table. If you leave this parameter blank, the default is 10,000.

---

---

- `argidind.sql`. Drops the index created by `argicind.sql`.

To complete this step, run the following scripts in the order listed:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argicind.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115gic.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argidind.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argicind.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115gic.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argidind.sql
```

## Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Enter uniform numbers for your company – Taiwan (required)	Taiwan
2. Enter GST registration information – Singapore (required)	Singapore
3. Update tax types (recommended)	Singapore
4. Modify existing globalization flexfields in Payables (required)	Thailand
5. Update Thai Payables tax codes (required)	Thailand
6. Update Thai Payables globalization flexfield attributes (required)	Thailand
7. Modify the attribute set for the Thai Output Tax Summary report (recommended)	Thailand

### Step 1: Enter uniform numbers for your company – Taiwan (required)

Perform for this country: <b>Taiwan</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Product Manager</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Government uniform invoice</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_ENTER_UNIFORM_NUMBERS_TAIWAN</b>	

In Step 5 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Chapter 2, you recorded uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) for your company. Enter these numbers in the Taxpayer ID field in the Locations window (Human Resources) as part of defining additional company information.

**Additional Information:** See Additional Company Information in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

### Step 2: Enter GST registration information – Singapore (required)

Perform for this country: <b>Singapore</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Product Manager</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>GST Reporting</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_ENTER_GST_REG_INFO_SINGAPORE</b>	

To enter GST registration information, first use the Locations window to enter additional information for a location, then define the location as a legal entity and enter the GST registration number in the Organization window. To complete this step, from the Singaporean AR responsibility, navigate to Setup > System > Organizations/Locations.

**Additional Information:** See Additional Company Information in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

### Step 3: Update tax types (recommended)

Perform for this country: <b>Singapore</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator/Manager (Payables and Receivables)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>GST reporting</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Payables User's Guide and Oracle Receivables User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_UPDATE_TAX_TYPES</b>	

To see historic transactions in the Singaporean GST F5 report, update the tax types for the historical transactions. Then, set up new tax types that correspond to the historical tax categories in the Payables and Receivables Lookups window and update the tax types associated with these transactions.

1. Run `jasgupg1.sql` to check the tax categories/tax types used in Singapore Payables and Receivables for all organizations.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

Review the `jasgupg1.lst` output file (in the current working directory). If no rows are listed, no further action is required.

2. In the Payables Lookups (Singaporean Payables > Oracle Payables > Setup > Lookups > Payables) and Receivables Lookups (Singaporean AR > Setup > System > QuickCodes > Receivables) windows, define new tax types that correspond to the tax categories associated with tax codes in Release 11.

The Singaporean GST F5 report prefixes Payables tax types with the tax class associated with the tax code. Tax classes are new, and can be either input or output. The report lists transactions grouped by tax class and tax type. Do not include INPUT or OUTPUT in the lookup codes that you define for the new tax types. For example, if you had the tax category INPUT-STANDARD in Release 11, define the corresponding Payables tax type in Release 11*i* with the lookup code STANDARD.

**Additional Information:** See Lookups in *Oracle Payables User's Guide*. See also Defining Receivables Lookups in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

3. Run `jasgupg2.sql` to update tax type fields in both Payables and Receivables Tax Codes windows for the tax codes that were associated with the tax category value in the globalization flexfield. This script updates all tax categories.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
```

At the prompt, specify the new tax type for each tax category. The script does not update the tax type if you do not specify a value for the tax type parameter. Enter a value, or leave blank and press Return.

For example:

```
Updating Tax Category INPUT-STANDARD
Tax Type:
```

If you enter STANDARD for the Tax Type, the script checks if the tax type STANDARD is defined as a lookup code for the lookup type Tax Type in the Payables Lookups window. It updates the tax type field with the new tax type for all records that were saved with tax category INPUT-STANDARD.

4. Run `jasgupg1.sql` to list the tax categories/tax types after the update:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

**Step 4: Modify existing globalization flexfields in Payables (required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Thailand</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Thai Payables and Receivables)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Thai Input Tax Summary Report, Thai Output Tax Summary Report</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_MODIFY_AP_GDF</b>	

Download and apply patch 1561962 to modify the existing globalization flexfields in Payables. It is available on [OracleMetaLink](#).

**Step 5: Update Thai Payables tax codes (required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Thailand</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Thai Payables)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Thai Input Tax Summary Report</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_UPDATE_THAI_AP_TAX_CODES</b>	

You can use a globalization flexfield in the Tax Codes window to indicate when you want Payables to add tax invoice information to a transaction. If you want to enter tax information when you enter invoices, select Invoices from the list of values. If you want to enter tax information when you enter payments, select Payments. Update this globalization flexfield for every VAT tax code in the old system.

To update tax codes, query the existing tax codes and complete the steps in Setting Up Payables for the Thai VAT in the *Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide*.

**Step 6: Update Thai Payables globalization flexfield attributes (required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Thailand</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Database Administrator</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Thai Input Tax Summary Report</b>

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes** Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JA\_UPDATE\_THAI\_AP\_GDF**

---

Globalization flexfield attributes that contain tax invoice information have been changed. Run `jathpupg.sql` to update these attributes.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jathpupg.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd $JA_TOP/patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jathpupg.sql
```

### Step 7: Modify the attribute set for the Thai Output Tax Summary report (recommended)

---

Perform for this country: <b>Thailand</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Application Specialist (Thai Receivables)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Thai Output Tax Summary Report</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide, Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User's Guide</b> Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>	
TUMS Step Key: <b>JA_MODIFY_THAI_OUTPUT_TAX_SUM_ATTR_SET</b>	

---

To print historical data with the Thai Output Tax Summary report, create a new attribute set and run the report using this new set.

#### To create a new attribute set:

1. In the Report eXchange Designer responsibility, create a new attribute set for the RX-only: Thai Output Tax Summary Report as described in the *Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User Guide*.
2. In the Register Columns window, select the Include in Attribute Set check box for `GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT2` (Tax Invoice Date in previous release) and for `GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT3` (Tax Invoice in previous release).
3. Click OK.

4. Navigate to the Displayed Columns tabbed region in the Attribute Set window and move GDF\_RA\_CUST\_TRX\_ATT2 and GDF\_RA\_CUST\_TRX\_ATT3 from the Available window to the Displayed window.
5. Navigate to the Column Details window and modify the report column header name in the Attribute Name column for these two attributes.

**To run a report with the new attribute set:**

1. In the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Programs window.
2. Query the Thai Output Tax Summary Report.
3. Select the Parameters button. The Concurrent Program Parameters window appears.
4. Select the Display check box to display the new attribute set. Save your work.

## Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Set up Appreciation QuickCode (recommended)	Austria, Germany, Switzerland
2. Upgrade Appreciation transactions (recommended)	Austria, Germany, Switzerland
3. Assign request groups to responsibilities (recommended)	Oracle Financials Users in Japan

### Step 1: Set up Appreciation QuickCode (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Austria, Germany, and Switzerland**      Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator and Application Specialist**      Do before anyone uses: **DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report**

Reference manual: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

TUMS Step Key: **JG\_SETUP\_APPR\_QUICKCODE**

The DACH Asset Summary report and DACH Depreciation Analysis report display appreciation separately from other types of unplanned depreciation. To distinguish between appreciation amounts when you run these reports, use the APPREC QuickCode for the unplanned depreciation type.

From the Oracle Assets responsibility use the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes) to maintain unplanned depreciation types. Query the TYPE

FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type and specify APPREC in the Value field to set up a new unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. Disable any other unplanned depreciation types that were previously used to record appreciation.

## Step 2: Upgrade Appreciation transactions (recommended)

---

Perform for this country: **Austria, Germany, and Switzerland**      Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

---

Performed by: **Database Administrator / Application Specialist**      Do before anyone uses: **DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report**

---

Reference manual: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

---

TUMS Step Key: **JG\_UPGRADE\_APPR\_TRX**

---

Appreciation transactions that were previously entered using a different unplanned depreciation type are not shown correctly in the DACH Asset Summary report or the DACH Depreciation Analysis report. Run the `jgzzfaap.sql` script to specify the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used.

After you run the script, use the APPREC QuickCode only as the unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. Manually disable the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used for appreciations.

Run `jgzzfaap.sql`, where `<type>` is the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used. Consult an Oracle Assets user to see which unplanned depreciation type, if any, was previously used to record appreciation transactions.

### UNIX:

```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

From the Oracle Assets responsibility, maintain unplanned depreciation types in the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes). To see possible values for unplanned depreciation types, query the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type.

For example, run this script to convert transactions with the OLDTYPE unplanned depreciation type to the APPREC QuickCode. The script updates the TRANSACTION\_SUBTYPE column in FA\_TRANSACTION\_HEADERS:

```
$ sqlplus scott/tiger @jgzzfaap.sql OLDTYPE
```

**Additional Information:** See Unplanned Depreciation in *Oracle Assets User's Guide*.

### Step 3: Assign request groups to responsibilities (recommended)

Perform for this country: <b>Japan</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Reports</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide</b>	
TUMS Step Key: <b>JG_ASSIGN_REQUEST_GROUPS</b>	

Assign new request groups to the responsibilities to access these reports. Perform this step in the Standard Request Submission window from the System Administrator responsibility (Security > Responsibility > Define).

Name	Name
Customer Balances Detail	Customer Balances Detail (180)
Customer Balances Summary	Customer Account Balance Detail
Customer Account Balance Detail (180)	Publish Tax Reconciliation by Taxable Account
Supplier Balances Detail	Supplier Balances Detail (180)
Supplier Balances Summary	Supplier Account Balance Detail
Supplier Account Balance Detail (180)	Subledger Balance Maintenance for Payables Accounting Periods
Subledger Balance Maintenance for Receivables Accounting Periods	

Assign this request group...	To the...
JGJP + AP Reports	Payables responsibilities
JGJP + AR Reports	Receivables responsibilities
JGJP + GL Reports	General Ledger responsibilities

In the Responsibilities window, navigate to the Request Group region. Use the list of values in the Name field to assign request groups to the responsibilities.

## Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers (conditionally required)	Poland, Turkey
2. Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield (conditionally required)	Denmark
3. Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices (required)	Italy
4. Update Hungarian VAT transactions (conditionally required)	Hungary
5. Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield (conditionally required)	Hungary

### Step 1: Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Poland, Turkey**    Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**    Do before anyone uses: **General Ledger for Poland or Turkey**

TUMS Step Key: **JE\_UPDATE\_POLISH\_TURK\_SEQ\_NUM**

In Release 11, the journal line sequence numbers were stored in a descriptive flexfield (JG\_ZZ\_RECON\_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, the journal line sequence numbers are stored in a globalization flexfield (JG\_GL\_JE\_LINES\_INFO) in the same window. Update the journal line sequence numbers to use the new flexfield:

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System) and set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for the GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations). Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Poland* for Polish GL Localizations or to *Turkey* for Turkish GL Localizations. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for the responsibility.
2. From the GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations), run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission windows.

---



---

**Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program once for each set of books.

---



---

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Financials for Poland User's Guide*; *Oracle Financials for Turkey User's Guide*.

## Step 2: Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: <b>Denmark</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Product Manager (Financials for Denmark)</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Danish EDI</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide</b>	
TUMS Step Key: <b>JE_UPDATE_DANISH_EFT_INVOICES</b>	

Oracle Financials for Denmark has replaced the Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) payment process with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). Migrate the additional country-specific invoice information for the outstanding invoices from the old EFT flexfield to the new globalization flexfield for EDI.

1. Update additional invoice information for all open invoices with a payment method of Electronic.

Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information. Before you migrate the invoice information, update the additional invoice information in the old EFT flexfields for all open invoices that you want to upgrade with a payment method of Electronic.

**Additional Information:** See Invoice EFT Information in *Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*.

2. Create a new hold code for the data migration script.

Create a new hold code for the data migration script to use when placing the holds. From the Invoice Approvals window (Danish AP > Setup > Invoice > Approvals), enter EFT\_TO\_EDI\_DATA\_MIGRATE in the Name field for the new hold code. In the Type field, select Invoice Hold Reason, and also Postable and Releaseable.

**Additional Information:** See Invoice Approvals in *Oracle Payables User's Guide*.

3. Migrate additional country-specific invoice information.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkedi.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkedi.sql
```

4. Enter missing information for invoices placed on hold.

Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information using the hold code you previously defined. Enter any missing information for these invoices. When the information is complete, manually release the holds and approve the invoices for payment.

**Additional Information:** See Entering Invoices in *Oracle Financials for Denmark*.

### Step 3: Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices (required)

Perform for this country: <b>Italy</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Database Administrator/Application Specialist</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Oracle Payables Summary VAT Report, Italian Purchase VAT Report, Italian Payables Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT)</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JE_UPDATE_TAXABLE_AMOUNTS_FOR_CUST_BILLS</b>	

Use the globalization flexfield in the Distributions window to record the taxable amounts for self invoices and custom bills. Self invoices and custom bills entered before the upgrade are not displayed on the Italian Payables Summary VAT Report, the Italian Purchase VAT Register, and the Italian Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT).

To ensure that the VAT reports correctly display these amounts, run `jeitapid.sql`. It updates invoice distributions that have a tax type of Custom Bill or Self Invoice by updating the `GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY` and `GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE1` at the invoice distribution level (on the `AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS` table).

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

Enter the Set of Books ID for the Italian organization at the prompt. If you have multiple Italian organizations, run the script once for each organization.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Financials for Italy User's Guide*.

**Step 4: Update Hungarian VAT transactions (conditionally required)**

Perform for this country: <b>Hungary</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Database Administrator</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Hungarian Purchases VAT Register or Hungarian Sales VAT Register</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JE_UPDATE_HUNGARIAN_VAT</b>	

Oracle Financials for Hungary uses a new method to mark VAT transactions that were already reported on a final version of the Hungarian Purchases VAT Register and Hungarian Sales VAT Register reports. Update the VAT transactions that were included on these reports so that the transactions are included the next time you run the reports:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvat.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvat.sql
```

The script lists all organization IDs and names available in the database. When the system administrator enters the organization ID for Hungary, the script updates the transactions by inserting additional information into the global attribute columns on the AP\_INVOICE\_DISTRIBUTIONS table for Payables transactions or the RA\_CUSTOMER\_TRX\_LINES table for Receivables transactions. Run the script for each Hungarian organization ID.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide*.

### Step 5: Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: <b>Hungary</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>10.7, 11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>System Administrator</b>	Do before anyone uses: <b>Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>No</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JE_ENABLE_HUNGARIAN_GDF</b>	

The Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report revalues all outstanding receivables accounts at a particular date, with regard to a stated reporting period, to reflect foreign exchange rate fluctuations since the original transaction date.

Not all transaction types of open items are revalued. You designate which transaction types are revalued in the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield on the Transaction Types window (Hungarian AR: Setup > Transactions > Transaction Types).

Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield by setting these profile options in the System Profile Values window (System Administrator: Profile > System):

<b>Set this profile option...</b>	<b>To this value...</b>
JG: Application	Oracle Receivables
JG: Product	European Localizations
JG: Territory	Hungary

Now, use the Revaluate Transaction Type field in this flexfield to manually designate which transaction types are revalued.

## Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks

<b>Checklist</b>	<b>Perform for this country...</b>
1. Update Colombian journal line third-party information (required)	Colombia

### Step 1: Update Colombian journal line third-party information (required)

Perform for this country: <b>Colombia</b>	Perform if upgrading from: <b>11.0</b>
Performed by: <b>Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (General Ledger)</b>	Users must log off: <b>No</b>
Reference manual: <b>Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide</b>	Requires Concurrent Manager: <b>Yes</b>
TUMS Step Key: <b>JL_UPDATE_COLOMBIAN_JOURNAL_LINES</b>	

In Release 11, Oracle Financials for Colombia stores journal line third-party information in a descriptive flexfield (JG\_ZZ\_RECON\_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, this information is stored in a globalization flexfield (JG\_GL\_JE\_LINES\_INFO) in the same window. Update the journal line third-party information to use the new flexfield:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System).
2. Set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for the Colombian GL Localizations responsibility. Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Colombia*. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for the responsibility.
3. From the Colombian GL responsibility, run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission window (Colombian Localization > Other > Requests > Run).

---



---

**Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program once for each set of books using a different responsibility.

---



---

**Additional Information:** See Entering Journal Line Third Party Information in *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

## Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

## Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Implement Self-Service Time (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Implement cross charge (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

### Step 1: Implement Self-Service Time (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide, Release 11i**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Self-Service Time**

If you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) or Project Time and Expense (to enter timecard information), you must implement Self-Service Time and roll it out to users. Refer to *Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide Release 11i* on [OracleMetaLink](#).

### Step 2: Implement cross charge (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Cross Charge**

TUMS Step Key: **PA\_IMPLEMENT\_CROSS\_CHARGE**

Cross charging and Borrowed and Lent Accounting are no longer enabled by using profile options. If you cross-charged transactions across Operating Units or used the Borrowed and Lent Revenue function before the upgrade, follow the Cross Charge and Inter-Project Billing implementation instructions in the *Oracle Projects User's Guide* to continue using this function.

## Human Resources

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Human Resources products you have installed.

## Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Recreate custom Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Drop obsolete Oracle users (recommended)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Recreate custom Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: System Administrator

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: Salary Administration

TUMS Step Key: PER\_RECREATE\_SALARY\_VIEW

You identified the custom location for the custom Salary proposals view script (PER\_SALARY\_PROPOSALS\_HRV) in Step 3 of the Oracle Human Resources Tasks in Chapter 1. After the custom changes have been applied, rerun the script to recreate the customized view:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PER_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

### Step 2: Drop obsolete Oracle users (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: No

Do before anyone uses: Restricted Security Profiles

Restricted security profiles may now be obsolete. In Release 11*i*, responsibilities that use restricted security profiles connect to the APPS Oracle user. You no longer have to maintain separate Oracle users for every restricted security profile. Release 10.7 reporting Oracle users are unaffected by this change.

To list Oracle users that were associated with restricted security profiles, run the following script, where <SID> is the value of \$ORACLE\_SID or \$TWO\_TASK (UNIX) or the value of ORACLE\_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP/admin/sql/peoldsec.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP%\admin\sql\peoldsec.sql
```

This script also indicates which Oracle users have been dropped from the database. The output is spooled to peoldsec.lst in the current working directory. If the Oracle users listed in peoldsec.lst do not contain the custom tables or views that you want to preserve, drop them — they are no longer used by Oracle HRMS.

Before dropping a user whose schema contains objects, thoroughly investigate these objects and the implications of dropping them. Pay attention to any cascading effects. For example, if the user owns a table, check whether any views or procedures depend on that table. For example:

**UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

To drop a user and all its schema objects (if any), you must have the DROP USER system privilege (typically held by a security administrator). Use either the Drop menu item on the Enterprise Manager/GUI, or the SQL command DROP USER.

If the user's schema contains any schema objects, use the CASCADE option to drop the user and all associated objects and foreign keys that depend on the tables of the user. If you do not specify CASCADE and the user's schema contains objects, an error message is returned and the user is not dropped.

To verify that the users have been successfully dropped, rerun peoldsec.sql at any time prior to dropping PER\_SECURITY\_PROFILES\_OLD.

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle8 Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Check for invalid U.S. address information (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Check for invalid U.S. address information (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**    Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**                      Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll or modifies existing employee tax information**

TUMS Step Key: **PAY\_CHECK\_INVALID\_ADDRESSES**

The Global Legislation driver (hrglobal.drv) creates pyvaladr.lst, which lists existing U.S. addresses (locations or personal addresses) that are invalid. The file is located in \$APPL\_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL\_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows). Review the file and correct invalid address data.

#### To correct location addresses:

In the Location window (Work Structures > Location), query the required location and amend the address as required and save your work.

#### To correct personal addresses:

In the People window (People > Enter and Maintain), query the person and choose the Address button. Amend the address as required and save your work.

After correcting data, regenerate the .lst file to verify that all addresses are valid. To regenerate the file, run the following script where <SID> is the value of \$ORACLE\_SID or \$TWO\_TASK (UNIX) or the value of ORACLE\_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PAY_TOP/admin/sql/pyvaladr.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PAY_TOP%\admin\sql\pyvaladr.sql
```

## Order Management

Review this section and complete only the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

## Oracle Inventory Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV (required)	N/A
2. Change Item Description profile option - INV (recommended)	System Administrator

### Step 1: Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Indicated key flexfields**

To improve performance of key flexfields, create indexes on the segment columns. We recommend creating these indexes for the following key flexfields:

Flexfield	Base Table
System Items	MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
Account Aliases	MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS
Stock Locators	MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS

1. To Determine whether a concatenated index exists for the flexfield segments:

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invflseg.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invflseg.sql
```

This script produces invidxch.lis, which has three sections: System Items, Account Aliases, and Stock Locators flexfields, with the corresponding MTL\_SYSTEM\_ITEMS\_B, MTL\_GENERIC\_DISPOSITIONS, and MTL\_ITEM\_LOCATIONS code combination tables. Each section contains information about flexfield segments (segment number, segment name, and segment column name enabled) and table indexes (index name, name of the indexed column, and the position of the column in an index on a table).

2. If you determine that the concatenated index does not already exist, create a concatenated index on the `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B` table. It must include all the segment columns enabled for the System Items flexfield, in the same order as the segments in the flexfield structure definition. For example, if you have `segment3`, `segment4`, `segment6` (in this order) enabled for the flexfield, create as follows:

**UNIX:**

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NS3
  2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
  3 (segment3,
  4  segment4,
  5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NS3
  2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
  3 (segment3,
  4  segment4,
  5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

Name the index using the format `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NSX`, where `X` is the first active segment column. In the example, the index name is `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NS3`. If the index already exists (as in the case of an upgrade from 10.7 or 11.0), its name may have a format `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_NX`.

3. Repeat the previous steps to create indexes for `MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS` (use index name format `MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS_NSX`) and `MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS` (use index name format `MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS_NSX`).

---

**Step 2: Change Item Description profile option - INV (recommended)**

---

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0      Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory) / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Items**

---

You can build an item description (for items that have an assigned catalog group) by either concatenating the item catalog group *name* with the enabled descriptive

element values, or by concatenating the item catalog group *description* with the enabled descriptive element values. The profile option INV:Use Catalog Name In the Item Description determines the method used. A value of *Yes* uses the catalog group name. *No* uses the catalog group description.

If your business logic mandates, during the upgrade (or at any other time), you can change this profile option.

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window. Set this option at the site level.

**Additional Information:** See Profile Options in Oracle Inventory in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

2. If you change the profile option, update all existing descriptions for items that have an assigned catalog group:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

**Additional Information:** See Overview of Item Cataloging in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

## Public Sector

Review this section and complete only the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

### Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate gross-based VAT data (conditionally required)	Application Specialist
2. Upgrade subledger security (conditionally required)	Database Administrator/Application Specialist

---

### Step 1: Migrate gross-based VAT data (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 12, 3.1, 3.3

Performed by: **Application Specialist**Reference manual: **No**Do before anyone uses: **Gross-based VAT data**TUMS Step Key: **IGI\_MIGRATE\_RECOV\_VAT\_TAX\_DISTRIBUTIONS**

If gross-based VAT was activated in the previous version, perform this step to migrate this data to the new Partially Reclaimable VAT tables.

1. Enable the recoverable tax option in Oracle Payables as described in Category 2, Step 3 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Chapter 2.
2. Set up recoverable taxes in Oracle Payables as described in Step 3 of Oracle Payables Tasks in this chapter.
3. Set up the tax code default in Payables. Navigate to the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials). In the Tax tabbed region, select an option from the list of values in the Default Tax Code field. Save your work.
4. Run the following script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igigbvuw.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igigbvuw.sql
```

---

### Step 2: Upgrade subledger security (conditionally required)

---

Perform if upgrading from: 12, 3.1, 3.3

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist**Reference manual: **No**Do before anyone uses: **Subledger Security**Users must log off: **Yes**Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**TUMS Step Key: **IGI\_UPGRADE\_SLS\_SETUPS**

The following steps upgrade subledger and security setup data and setup steps. You must have completed all other upgrade steps before you perform this step.

---

---

**Note:** Perform this step only if subledger security is already in use. Make sure the concurrent manager is running before you begin.

---

---

1. Upgrade subledger security by running the following script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls1.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls1.sql
```

2. Check the log file (igiasls1.log) for errors. If any errors are reported, do not proceed with this upgrade step and do not use subledger security until the errors are fixed.
3. Apply security and create subledger security objects:
  - Log on to the application and choose the System Administrator responsibility.
  - Choose OPSF (I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Apply Security.
  - Select the CREATE parameter.
  - Submit the request (check the log file for the submitted request).

**Additional Information:** See Applying Security Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in the *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

4. Verify that the subledger security structure is successfully upgraded by logging on as system administrator and reviewing the following.

**Subledger security groups:**

In the Maintain Groups window (OPSF(I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Maintain Groups), define, re-enable, or delete security groups as required. Save your work.

**Additional Information:** See Maintaining Security Groups Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

**Subledger security secure tables:**

In the Maintain Tables window (OPSF(I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Maintain Tables), define, re-enable, or delete secure tables as required. Verify that all secure tables exist in the database and include the column JE\_UK\_VIEW\_COLUMN. Save your work.

**Additional Information:** See Maintaining Secure Tables Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

**Subledger security allocations:**

In the Maintain Allocations window (OPSF(I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Maintain Allocations), allocate tables to or delete tables from security groups, disable, or re-enable tables as required. Save your work.

**Additional Information:** See Maintaining Allocations Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

5. Upgrade subledger security data by running the following script:

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls2.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls2.sql
```

Review the output. If errors are reported, omit this security upgrade step and do not use the subledger security feature until you fix the errors.

---



---

## Finishing Your Upgrade

This chapter describes tasks affect Oracle Applications as a whole. You must perform them after all system and product-specific steps are complete. Performing them out of order may reverse upgrade processes that you have completed previously. This chapter contains the following sections:

- System Maintenance Tasks on page 7-1
- Required Finishing Tasks on page 7-6
- Logging On to Oracle Applications on page 7-8
- Tasks Specific To Your Installation on page 7-9

### System Maintenance Tasks

After you have verified the upgrade, you perform certain "clean-up" tasks for all Applications, not just those that are licensed installed or shared, since all database components are installed and upgraded together.

---



---

**Attention:** Before you perform these steps, back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, back up the Oracle Applications database.

---



---

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop unneeded database objects (recommended)	Database Administrator
2. Install online help (recommended)	Database Administrator
3. Delete obsolete product files (recommended)	System Administrator

Checklist	Performed by
4. Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets (recommended)	Database Administrator
5. Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables (recommended)	Database Administrator
6. Remove old subledger security schemas for Public Sector Financials (recommended)	Database Administrator

### Step 1: Drop unneeded database objects (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual

Users must log off: No

To help remove obsolete objects, we supply a SQL\*Plus script for many products. The script is `$(PROD_TOP)/admin/sql/<prod>dold.sql` (UNIX) or `%<PROD>_TOP%\admin\sql\<prod>dold.sql` (Windows), where `<PROD>` (or `<prod>`) represent the product short name. For example, PO (Purchasing).

---



---

**Warning: Do not run `<prod>dold.sql` until you have verified that the upgrade is complete and successful.**

---



---

Each script lists obsolete objects. Find the script for the product and determine if you want to drop the obsolete objects. If so, enter the following command, where `<SID>` is the value of `$ORACLE_SID` or `$TWO_TASK` (UNIX) or the value of `ORACLE_SID` or `LOCAL` (Windows). Pay special to instructions in the script about additional parameters.

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
```

For example, to run the Purchasing script:

#### UNIX:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/admin/podold.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\admin\sql\podold.sql \
      <PO username> <PO password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

**This product...****...requires these parameters**

Common Country Features (JG)	<GL username> <GL password> <JG username> <JG password> <AR username> <AR password> <FA username> <FA password>
------------------------------	---

Financials for EMEA (JE)	<AP username> <AP password>
--------------------------	-----------------------------

**Step 2: Install online help (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual	Users must log off: No

To install online help, download patch 2662802 from *OracleMetaLink* and apply it to your system. Read the readme file carefully, and following any special instructions you find there.

**Step 3: Delete obsolete product files (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual, Oracle Applications Concepts	Users must log off: No

Delete the product files for the previous release (if you have not done so already). You may want to retain report output files or customized programs. Output files are stored in the old log and output subdirectories under each product's top directory, under the log and output directories you created, or under a common directory. To remove obsolete files for an old release, change to the top directory of that release and enter the following command:

**UNIX:**

```
$ rm -rf <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ rm -rf /d01/appl/r10
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> del /s /q <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
C:\> del /s /q \APPL110
```

---

**Note:** If you are upgrading from 10.7SC, you can delete all obsolete client-side product files at this time.

---

**Step 4: Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets (recommended)**

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle 8i SQL Reference Manual** Users must log off: **Yes**

---

To conform to multilingual changes, a number of tables have been renamed to indicate they are base tables (\_B) and their descriptive columns have been copied to a new table with the same base name, plus a \_TL suffix to indicate they are translated tables. The column in the base table is set to unused, so you cannot view the column. To drop obsolete columns, run the following script. It requires BATCHSIZE as a parameter.

**UNIX:**

```
$ cd $FA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <FA username>/<FA password> @facoldr.sql
```

**Windows:**

```
C:\> cd %FA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <FA username>/<FA password> @facoldr.sql
```

Table name in prior release	Base table with dropped column	Translated with copied column	Column name to be dropped
FA_ADDITIONS	FA_ADDITIONS_B	FA_ADDITIONS_TL	description
FA_CATEGORIES	FA_CATEGORIES_B	FA_CATEGORIES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	meaning
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	meaning
FA_RX_ATTRSETS	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_B	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_TL	user_attribute_set

Table name in prior release	Base table with dropped column	Translated with copied column	Column name to be dropped
FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_B	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_TL	attribute_name

To make sure the data in the column to be dropped has been copied correctly from the base table to the translated table, confirm that there is an equal number of rows in both tables. You can do this by running a select count from SQL\*Plus from the base table and the translated table. Also, you can select the column name in the translated table of the column that will be dropped from the base table to make sure there is data in that column. For example, the upgrade drops the Description column from the FA\_ADDITIONS\_B table. Select Description and confirm that the column has been correctly populated.

### Step 5: Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0

Performed by: Database Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Payables User's Guide

Do before anyone uses: Oracle Applications

If all operating units use Accrual Basis Accounting, run the following script to drop the indexes on the CASH\_POSTED\_FLAG columns in AP\_INVOICE\_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP\_INVOICE\_PAYMENTS.

---



---

**Attention:** Do *not* perform this step if 1) at least one of the operating units uses Combined Basis Accounting, or 2) if you have at least one operating unit that uses Cash Basis Accounting and at least one operating unit that uses Accrual Basis Accounting.

---



---

#### UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

#### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

If all operating units use Cash Basis Accounting, run the following script to drop the indexes on the ACCRUAL\_POSTED\_FLAG columns in AP\_INVOICE\_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP\_INVOICE\_PAYMENTS:

### UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

### Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

## Step 6: Remove old subledger security schemas for Public Sector Financials (recommended)

---

Perform if upgrading from: **12, 3.1, 3.3** Performed by: **Database Administrator**

---

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **No**

---

You must have already run `igidold.sql` (as described in Step 1 in this section) before you continue.

If you used subledger security in a previous version of Public Sector Financials (International), you should remove any additional secure schemas that were created. Running `igidold.sql` in Step 1 dynamically created a script to drop these additional schemas. If the script is empty, you can omit this step.

If there are additional schemas, run the following script to drop them. This is potentially a long-running process. It could take up to 2 hours to drop each listed user.

### UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM uername>/<SYSTEM password> @igidropschema.sql
```

### Windows

```
C:\> cd $IGI_TOP\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM uername>/<SYSTEM password> @igidropschema.sql
```

## Required Finishing Tasks

All users must perform the tasks in this section to finish the upgrade.

## Implement New Product and Country-specific Functionality

Refer to the implementation or setup guides (or implementation or setup section of the user's guides) associated with the Oracle Applications products in your system

for instructions on implementing or setting up new products and features. Refer to *OracleMetaLink* for other product-specific issues.

## Resize the Database

The size of the production database depends on the products you have licensed and the additional features (such as multiple languages or multiple organizations) you configure in your system. Refer to the product-specific documentation.

## Change Passwords

The default passwords for the SYS account and SYSTEM account of the Oracle Applications database are *change\_on\_install* and *manager*, respectively. To maintain database security and restrict access to these accounts, change these passwords.

---

---

**Note:** The password for both SYS and SYSTEM in the Vision Demo is *manager*.

---

---

---

---

**Additional Information:** See Managing User Privileges and Roles in *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*.

---

---

In addition, change the default passwords for the Applications product accounts in the production and test databases.

---

---

**Additional Information:** See Applications DBA Duties in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. See also *Oracle Applications Concepts*.

---

---

## Maintain Snapshot Information

Snapshots give a picture of selected APPS-related files in a given APPL\_TOP. They record details for each file in the APPL\_TOP (like file name and file version). They may also record summary information about patches that have been applied to the APPL\_TOP. You can use snapshots to compare two different APPL\_TOPs or the same APPL\_TOP at different times, and to track the current status of an APPL\_TOP.

**Additional Information:** See Maintain Applications Files Tasks in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

You must take a snapshot of each APPL\_TOP before applying any patches so that the prerequisite patch checking feature in AutoPatch will function correctly. To set up the Snapshot feature, follow this steps:

1. From the AD Administration main menu, select the Maintain Applications Files menu. Run the “Maintain snapshot information” task.
2. Under Snapshot Options, choose “Manage Snapshots within this Application System.”
3. Select “Refresh the Current View of this APPL\_TOP in the database.”
4. Repeat this step for each APPL\_TOP in your system.

Running this task takes one to two hours for each APPL\_TOP. However, it does not require that users log off. You need run it only once for each APPL\_TOP. After that, AutoPatch automatically keeps the current-view snapshot for each APPL\_TOP up to date.

## Back Up Oracle Applications

Have the operating system administrator back up the Oracle Applications product files, including COMMON\_TOP, 8.0.6 technology components, and the iAS technology components. Have the database administrator back up the Oracle Applications database and Oracle home components.

## Logging On to Oracle Applications

You start Oracle Applications and access all Oracle E-Business Suite products from the E-Business Suite Home page, which you access from the Oracle Applications Login page, located at the following URL:

`http://<host name>.<domain name>:<HTTP port>/oa_servlets/AppsLogin`

For example:

`http://oraapps1.oracle.com:8000/oa_servlets/AppsLogin`

---

---

**Note:** You can also access the E-Business Suite Home page from the Rapid Install Portal. See Access the Rapid Install Portal in Chapter 1 of *Installing Oracle Applications*.

---

---

The system administrator should log in the first time using the sysadmin login account that is pre-configured in the Applications installation. Use the System Administrator responsibility to launch an Applications Forms session where the system administrator can complete the implementation steps.

**Additional Information:** See Appendix F in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. See also E-Business Suite Home in *Oracle Applications Concepts*.

## Tasks Specific To Your Installation

The tasks in this section are conditionally required — you must perform the ones that apply to your installation of Oracle Applications.

### Register Newly Licensed Products

All existing products, country-specific functionalities, and languages have been upgraded. However, if you have added products (that were *not* licensed before the upgrade) to your system, you must register them now. Likewise, if you are now using country-specific functionalities or languages that you were not using before the upgrade, you must register these components now. See Registering Applications Products in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* for complete information.

### Configure the Oracle Workflow Java-based Notification Mailer

If you plan to use the Oracle Workflow java-based Notifications Mailer, you must complete additional setup and implementation steps. See *Configuring the Oracle Workflow 2.6 Java-based Notification Mailer with Oracle Applications 11i* (OracleMetaLink Document ID: 231286.1) for complete information.

### Set Up and Implement Oracle Discoverer End User Layer (EUL)

If you are using any of the products in the following list, you must complete additional setup and implementation steps for Discoverer 4i EUL.

<b>Product Short Name</b>	<b>Product</b>
abm	Activity Based Management
ams	Oracle Marketing
bis	Business Intelligence System

<b>Product Short Name</b>	<b>Product</b>
bix	Interaction Center Intelligence
cn	Oracle Sales Compensation
eni	Engineering Intelligence
fii	Financial Intelligence
hri	Human Resource Intelligence
isc	Supply Chain Intelligence
okc	Oracle Contracts
oki	Oracle Contracts Intelligence
opi	Operations Intelligence
pjm	Oracle Project Manufacturing
prj	Oracle Project Resource Management
pmi	Process Manufacturing Intelligence
poa	Purchasing Intelligence
psb	Oracle Public Sector Budgeting

Follow the instructions in *Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i* (OracleMetaLink Document ID: 139516.1) to set up and configure the Discoverer EUL. The following products require additional security steps, as described in the associated OracleMetaLink document.

<b>Product</b>	<b>Documentation</b>
Oracle Project Resource Management (PJR)	<i>Post Installation Documentation Update for PJR.C Customer Using Discoverer 4i</i> (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 183491.1)
Oracle Marketing Online (AMS)	<i>Oracle Marketing Online Post Upgrade Steps for Oracle Discoverer</i> (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 187070.1)
Oracle Contracts (OKC/OKI)	<i>Discoverer 4i End User Layer (EUL) Maintenance for Oracle Contracts 11i</i> (OracleMetaLink Doc ID: 187508.1)

## Set Up and Implement Oracle Embedded Data Warehouse (EDW)

If you have licensed Oracle Embedded Data Warehouse (EDW), you must complete additional setup and implementation steps before using this product. Refer to

*Oracle Embedded Data Warehouse Release Notes (OracleMetaLink Document ID: 224817.1) for complete information.*

## Convert Custom Message Dictionary Functions

Remove the following Message Dictionary functions from the custom code:

Function	Action
fddgcs/fddgme	There is no longer a cascading stack or a message explanation. These functions are obsolete.
fddtoken	Replace with afdtoken. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afdtoken(/*_ text *token_name, text *token_value _/);</pre>
fddname	Replace with afdname. Takes two arguments (the fddname function takes only the message name). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afdname(/*_ text *applname, text *msg_name _/);</pre>
fddget	We strongly recommend that you convert to afdget. The new interface allows you to pass a buffer and buffer size. The old interface assumed the existence of a fixed-size global variable that is internal to the function. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afdget(/*_ text *msg_buf, size_t buf_size _/);</pre>
fddmsg	Convert to afderror or afdshow. We strongly recommend using these functions explicitly so that you get the intended display behavior (because the new message system display is based on the function called, not on message properties). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afderror(/*_ void _/);</pre>

**Additional Information:** See *Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual, Release 10*. See also *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*.

## Convert Database to Multiple Organizations (Multi-Org)

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for Multi-Org. However, the production and test databases are not. If you want Multi-Org architecture in the production or test environments, refer to the instructions for converting to Multi-Org in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

**Additional Information:** See *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*.

## Convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for MRC. However, the production and test databases are not. If the production or test environment

requires multiple reporting currencies, refer to the instructions for installing and implementing MRC in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*.

## **Understand System Administration Tasks**

Make sure you are completely familiar with the information in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. In addition, always check [OracleMetaLink](#) for the latest product information.

## **Understand Oracle Applications Maintenance Tasks**

Make sure you are completely familiar with the information in both volumes of the *Maintaining Oracle Applications Documentation Set*. *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* and *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* contain important details about administration utilities, as well as instructions on how to perform manual maintenance tasks.

This appendix contains information about additional information or services that you may find useful as you upgrade Oracle Applications. It contains these topics:

- Documentation Accessibility
- Related Documentation
- Training and Support
- EMM Advantage

### Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle Corporation is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For additional information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

#### Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

JAWS, a Windows screen reader, may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, JAWS may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

## Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle Corporation does not own or control. Oracle Corporation neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

## Related Documentation

All Release 11i documentation is included on the *Oracle Applications Document Library* CD, which is supplied in the Release 11i Update CD Pack. You can download some soft-copy documentation from Oracle Docs Online at <http://otn.oracle.com/documentation>. Or, you can purchase hard-copy documentation from the Oracle Store at <http://oraclestore.oracle.com>.

The following table lists other manuals and guides you should have on hand during the upgrade process.

If you are looking for...	See these documents...
Additional information	<i>Oracle Applications Concepts</i> <i>Installing Oracle Applications</i> <i>Maintaining Oracle Applications Documentation Set:</i> <i>Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities</i> <i>Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures</i> <i>Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes*</i> <i>Oracle Applications Release Notes*</i> <i>Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes*</i> <i>Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide</i> <i>Oracle Self-Service Web Applications Implementation Manual</i> <i>Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide</i> <i>Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide</i> <i>Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual</i>
Information on new features in this release	<i>Release Content Documents and Features Summary Matrices*</i> <i>Oracle Applications DBA 11i+ Features Matrix*</i> <i>Oracle Applications Product Update Notes</i> <i>Electronic Technical Reference Manual (eTRM)*</i> <i>Release Content Documents (RCD)*</i>
Application-specific features	<i>Oracle Applications user guides</i> <i>Oracle Applications implementation manuals</i> <i>Customer Relationship Management implementation manuals</i> <i>Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications</i> <i>Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications</i>
Information about custom development	<i>Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products</i> <i>Oracle Applications Developers' Guide</i>

<b>If you are looking for...</b>	<b>See these documents...</b>
Database information	<i>Oracle8i Concepts</i> <i>Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide</i> <i>Oracle8i Reference</i> <i>Oracle8i Designing and Tuning for Performance</i> <i>Oracle8i National Language Support Guide</i>
*Available only on OracleMetaLink	

The readme file for patches that you have installed may contain information about new documentation or documentation patches that you can download.

## Training and Support

Oracle offers a complete set of training courses and multi-level support services.

### Training

You can attend courses offered by Oracle University at any one of our many Education Centers, arrange for trainers to teach at your facility, or use Oracle Learning Network (OLN) — Oracle University's online education utility. Oracle training professionals can also develop custom courses using your organization structure, terminology, and data as examples.

### Oracle Support Services

Oracle Support Services offers a comprehensive portfolio of focused services that support your IT infrastructure (<http://www.oracle.com/support>). If you contact Oracle Support Services, have this information available:

- your CSI number
- the operating system and version
- the release of Oracle Applications you are installing and the versions of the Oracle Server and Oracle tools you are using
- the release of Oracle Applications you are upgrading from
- a description of the problem as well as specific information about any error messages you received
- whether you have dial-in capability
- Applications log files. They are located in `$COMMON_TOP/admin/install` (UNIX) or `%COMMON_TOP%\admin\install` (Windows) and in the Oracle

Universal Installer inventory log directory. If there are problems with your upgrade, Oracle Support Services may ask for information in these files.

- the output of the AD Configuration utility, contained in the `adutconf.lst` file

**Additional Information:** See AD Configuration in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

### **OracleMetaLink**

OracleMetaLink is a self-service, web-based support connection, which is maintained by Oracle Support Services 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Use it to obtain information and advice from technical libraries and forums, download patches, look at bug details, and create or update TARs. Register at <http://metalink.oracle.com>, and check for updates and information before you begin to upgrade any Oracle Applications. The *Start Here* CD also contains links to the various resources on OracleMetaLink.

### **Oracle Consulting Services**

Upgrading Oracle Applications, as with using any software package, can be complex due to the number of configuration options, network and operating systems, and other considerations. We recommend that you engage the services of a consulting organization with Release 11i experience to assist with the configuration and implementation. Oracle Consulting Services can help you:

- determine machine size and database size required by Oracle Applications
- install or upgrade Oracle Applications
- implement Oracle Applications products
- customize Oracle Applications products
- install and configure multiple language support
- develop custom applications for use with Oracle Applications
- train users of Oracle Applications

## **EMM Advantage**

The EasiPath Migration Method (EMM Advantage) offers a methodology for upgrading Oracle Applications. Produced by Oracle Corporation, EMM Advantage helps you structure and manage your upgrade project.

A comprehensive migration toolkit, EMM Advantage is a tested framework for quality migrations. It includes the Oracle EasiPath Migration Method (EMM), a proven, structured approach used successfully worldwide by Oracle consultants, and Project Management Method (PJM), a standardized Oracle approach to project management. The EMM Advantage toolkit, in combination with your skills, experience, and business knowledge, will ensure a higher-quality migration and lead you to business results faster. It is available from the Oracle Direct Marketing group in your country, or you can contact your local Oracle Sales Representative.



---

---

# Index

## A

---

- a1418823.sql, 2-41
- a1418828.sql, 2-41
- a1451137.sql, 1-8
- abtbscnv.pls, 2-5
- accessibility
  - in external web sites, A-2
  - statement of, A-1
- Account Generator, 2-9
  - customizing defaults (FlexBuilder), 4-22
  - customizing process (FlexBuilder), 4-21
  - how to upgrade (FlexBuilder), 4-22
  - replaces FlexBuilder, xxxi
- account segment values
  - correct account type for (GL), 6-10
- accounting data model
  - patch for (AX), 2-13
- accounting periods
  - closing (AX), 2-16
  - closing (CST), 3-19
- Accrual Reconciliation report
  - warning about (INV), 2-42
- AD Merge Patch
  - using, 4-4
- AD minipack
  - applying, xvii, 4-2
- ADA
  - compliance with, A-1
- addb817\_nt.sql, 3-31
- addb817.sql, 3-31
- addbjava\_nt.sql, 3-32
- addbjava.sql, 3-32
- addbmisc.sql, 3-32
- additional components
  - licensing, 7-9
- address information
  - checking for invalid (PAY-US), 6-38
- addrpbco.sql, 1-3
- adgntbsp.sql, 2-6
- administration directory
  - access to (FND), 2-8
- adovars, 2-3
- adpuver.sql, 3-27
- adstoplg.sql, 3-36
- adsy817\_nt.sql, 3-31
- adsy817.sql, 3-31
- adsysapp2.sql, 3-34
- adt00001.lst, xxii
- adupinfo.lst, 3-35
- adupinfo.sql, 3-35
- adutconf.sql, xxvi
- advrf107.sql, 2-4, 2-5
- advrfmrc.sql, 4-12
- affcfb.sql, 2-9
- affixcvr.sql, 4-13
- afindxpr.sql, 2-7
- afpregdi.sql, 2-7
- afstatrn.sql, 1-5
- akchkp16.sql, 3-3
- akchkr11.rpt, 3-4
- akchkr11.sql, 3-3
- akchp16.rpt, 3-3
- Alert and Action Set Check alerts
  - purging (ALR), 1-7
- alrdtrig.sql, 3-2
- apaccr.sql, 7-5
- apaltfsp.sql, 2-19

- apboepre.sql, 2-19
- apcash.sql, 7-6
- apfspre1.sql, 2-20
- apfspre2.sql, 2-20
- apmsbrep.sql, 2-17
- apofftax.sql, 6-16
- APPL\_TOP
  - changing character set, xxvii
- application specialist
  - responsibilities of, xiv
- application tier components
  - creating in an upgrade, xvii
  - installing on Windows, 2-2
- applications listeners
  - shutting down (db), 3-29
- Applications Login page
  - URL for, 7-8
- APPLMSK, 4-19
- Appreciation
  - setting up QuickCode (JG), 6-26
  - upgrading transactions (JG), 6-27
- approval notifications
  - upgrading (PO), 5-54
- APPS schemas
  - compiling (db), 4-8
  - validating (db), 2-4, 4-8
- APPS<SID>, 2-3
- apucfrpt.sql, 5-8
- apuiniimp.sql, 3-7
- apumccur.sql, 3-6
- apxdfp01.sql, 6-17
- AR seed data
  - changes, xxxii
- ar115chk.sql, 3-10
- ar115gic.sql, 6-20
- ar115upd.sql, 3-11
- ar115vdr.sql, 5-16
- ar115vrf.sql, 3-11
- architecture
  - in this release, xxiv
- argicind.sql, 6-20
- argidind.sql, 6-20
- ASL Upgrade process
  - using (PO), 5-56
- asset lines
  - transferring (PA), 1-15
- attachment files
  - determining upload directory (FND), 1-6
  - loading into database (FND), 4-20
- attribute set
  - modifying (JA), 6-25
- audience
  - for Upgrade Manual, xiv
- AutoAccounting rules
  - setting up for Burden Transactions (GMS), 5-60
  - verifying (GMS), 5-60
- AutoCreate Installed Base program
  - running (ONT), 2-44
- automatic archive logging
  - turning off (db), 3-36
- AutoPost
  - reviewing criteria for (GL), 6-12
- AutoSource rules
  - verifying your upgrade of (PO), 5-55
- AutoUpgrade
  - using, xvi
- Average Rates cost type
  - defining (CST), 5-44
- awards
  - required baselined budget for (GMS), 3-23
- axxpos01.sql, 5-6
- axxpos02.sql, 5-6
- axxpos06.sql, 5-6
- axxpre01.sql, 2-14
- axxpre02.sql, 2-15, 6-23

## B

---

- b747306a, 2-18
- b747306b, 2-18
- backup
  - database, 3-38, 4-10, 7-8
  - Oracle Applications, 4-10
  - product files, 7-8
- balance reports
  - submitting (AX), 2-16
- balances
  - calculating (AX), 2-15
- basepath variables
  - for custom application, 2-3

- batch commit size
  - affect on performance, xx
- bifurcation (ONT), 2-49
- billing cycle names
  - updating (PA), 5-33
- billing extensions
  - updating customized (PA), 5-31
- billing title
  - populating for employee assignments (PA), 5-34
- block size
  - requirement, xx
- Brazilian subledgers
  - upgrading (JL), 2-29

## C

---

- Canadian setup
  - recording (JA), 2-26
- catalog description profile option
  - defining (INV), 6-40
- categories
  - in an upgrade, xiv
- CBO
  - column-level histograms (db), 4-7
  - definition of, xxv
  - gathering database statistics for (db), 1-4, 3-35, 4-7
  - upgrading to, xxiv
  - using FND\_STATS, 1-4
- certification information
  - where to find, xviii
- Certify
  - how to access, xviii
- character columns
  - migrating non-integer data from (AX), 5-5
- character sets
  - changing, xxvii
- character-mode
  - upgrading from, xiii, xxiv
- check procedures
  - running (GMS), 3-23, 3-24
- CLASSPATH, 2-3
- client extensions
  - adding parameters (PA), 5-35

- backing up packages and views (PA), 3-15
- reinstalling packages and views (PA), 5-39
- client software
  - configuring (db), 4-5
- collection elements
  - user-defined (AR), xxxii
- columns
  - dropping obsolete, xxv, 7-4
- commitment views
  - adding non-recoverable tax amounts (PA), 5-37
- company information
  - defining additional for Singapore (JA), 6-21
  - defining additional for Taiwan (JA), 6-21
- concurrent managers
  - shutting down (db), 3-29
  - startup parameters, 4-17
- concurrent processing servers
  - restricting access to (FND), 4-18
- concurrent programs
  - managing custom libraries (AOL), 6-6
  - reconnecting spawned (FND), 4-16
- concurrent requests
  - purging (FND), 2-8
- conditionally required step
  - definition of, xv
- consolidated upgrade patches
  - applying, xvii
- constraints
  - disabling custom (db), 3-37
  - re-enabling custom (db), 4-9
- consulting services
  - using, A-4
- ConText
  - removing (db), 3-34
- control files
  - recreating (db), 3-30
- conventions
  - typographical, xv
- cost-based optimization
  - See CBO, xxv
- country-specific functionalities
  - licensing additional, 7-9
- CPU
  - requirements in an upgrade, xviii
- credit memo invoice dates

- correcting (PA), 2-34
- cross charge
  - implementing (PA), 6-35
- crucial downtime
  - definition of, xx
- CTXSYS tablespace
  - creating, 3-34
- custom code
  - updating (HR), 1-17
- CUSTOM libraries
  - migrating (FND), 4-17
  - preserving (FND), 1-6
- customers
  - migrating as persons (AR), 1-12
- customizations
  - backing up (db), 1-5
  - help files, xxix
  - maintaining for scripts or reports (FND), 4-17
  - managing, xxviii
  - preserving CUSTOM library (FND), 1-6
  - preserving in an upgrade, xxviii
  - reapplying after upgrade, 4-6
  - upgrading and patching, xxix
- CUSTOM.pll, 4-17

## D

---

- DACH reports, 6-26
- DAD
  - verifying (env), 4-26
- daily rates
  - determining conflicts in (GL), 2-12
  - loading customized programs (GL), 2-13
  - migrating (GL), 5-3
  - reviewing (GL), 2-10
- Danish EFT invoices
  - paying (JE), 2-29
- dapmc115.drv, 5-9
- darmc115.drv, 5-18
- data
  - correcting existing (JA), 5-19
  - invalid for non-Global Demo (AK), 3-3
  - migrating to new tables (FV), 5-62
- data fix
  - running (PA), 2-40

- data model changes
  - for MRC (AP), 5-9
  - for MRC (AR), 5-17
- database
  - backing up, xxiv, 1-2, 3-38, 4-10, 7-8
  - CBO statistics, xxv
  - changing character set, xxvii
  - changing passwords, 7-7
  - correcting problems (AR), 3-10
  - dropping objects, 7-2
  - migrating, xxii
  - relocating files (db), 3-30
  - renaming custom objects (db), 1-3
  - shutting down (FND), 1-2
  - sizing, 7-7
  - starting (db), 3-30
  - switching to new ORACLE\_HOME (db), 3-29
  - updating to current release level, 4-3
  - using multiple, xxvi
- database administrator
  - responsibilities of, xiv
- database server
  - resources, xxi
- Definer Rights
  - declaring, 4-9
- deliveries/departures
  - closing (ONT), 2-46
- directory file protection
  - changing (FND), 4-18
- directory group
  - changing, 4-19
- Discoverer
  - set up steps for, 7-9
- discrete jobs
  - closing (WIP), 1-21
- disk space
  - requirements in an upgrade, xix
- docs.oracle.com
  - using, A-2
- documentation
  - accessibility, A-1
  - links to external sites, A-2
  - list of, xvi
- documentation library
  - contents, A-2

downtime  
    minimizing, xxi

## E

---

EasiPath Migration Method, A-5  
E-Business 11i Upgrade Assistant  
    about, xxi  
E-Business Suite Home  
    accessing page, 7-8  
EFT  
    partitioning system formats (JG), 3-12  
    updating invoices for EDI (JE), 6-30  
    updating Swedish payment formats (JE), 2-28  
electronic mail  
    for concurrent managers (FND), 4-16  
Electronic Technical Reference Manual  
    (eTRM), xxiv  
EMM Advantage  
    how it works, A-4  
employee assignments  
    billing titles for (PA), 5-34  
End User Layer  
    setting up, 7-9  
environment  
    setting up, 2-3  
    variables, 2-3  
    verifying, 4-26  
event billing  
    FIFO marking (PA), 5-40  
exception report  
    running (ONT), 2-47  
exchange rate migration script  
    running (HR), 5-43  
    running (HR/PAY), 5-41, 5-42  
expenditure types  
    setting up for Burden Transactions (GMS), 5-61  
external documents  
    multilingual, xxviii  
external web sites  
    accessibility of, A-2

## F

---

facoldr.sql, 7-4

family consolidated upgrade patches  
    applying, xvii  
FastFormula definitions  
    updating (HR), 1-18  
FCUPs  
    applying, xvii  
file privilege  
    altering for concurrent manager files  
        (FND), 4-19  
file system  
    laying down, 2-2  
    requirements in an upgrade, xix  
finishing steps  
    conditionally required, 7-9  
    in an upgrade, xiv  
    required, 7-6  
FlexBuilder  
    indicating use of (FLX), 2-9  
    replaced by Account Generator, xxxi  
    using rules (FlexBuilder), 2-9  
flexfields  
    creating column indexes (AR), 5-10  
    creating contexts/segments (AR), 5-16  
    fixing cross-validation rules (FND), 4-13  
    modifying existing (JA), 6-24  
    segment columns  
        creating indexes on (INV), 6-39  
    setting up definitions (ONT), 5-50  
    updating attributes (JA), 6-24  
    upgrading dates, 4-14, 4-24  
    upgrading numbers (FND), 4-14  
Flexible Date Format, xxviii  
flmlsmck.sql, 2-30  
.fmb files  
    copying to AU\_TOP (AOL), 6-5  
FND\_DESCR\_FLEX\_CONTEXTS  
    updating custom calls to (AOL), 6-4  
FND\_HISTOGRAM\_COLS table, 4-7  
FND\_LOOKUPS  
    updating custom calls to (AOL), 6-4  
FND\_PRODUCT\_INSTALLATIONS table, 4-7  
FND\_STATS  
    using, 1-4  
fndcpepr, 4-16  
FNDMDCVT program (AOL), 6-5

- forms
  - copying custom library (AOL), 6-5
  - date format, xxviii
  - Multiple Radix Support, xxviii
  - rewriting custom character-mode (AOL), 1-7
- future-dated payment
  - choosing method for (AP), 2-18
  - setting up account (AP), 6-16
- fvapi107.sql, 3-26
- fvapi110.sql, 3-26
- fvupditv.sql, 5-62

## G

---

- geocodes data
  - updating (HR), 1-19
- GIS subsidiaries
  - reviewing (GL), 6-12
- GL
  - defining tax assignments (AR), 6-19
  - upgrade option 1 (GL), 2-11
  - upgrade option 2 (GL), 2-12
- Global Demo Database (10SC)
  - upgrading, xxvii
- gluacsum.sql, 6-11
- glurtmrt.sql, 5-4
- glurtrpp.sql, 2-12
- glurtrpt.sql, 5-3
- gmsup115.drf, 4-25
- gmsupaud.sql, 3-24

## H

---

- hard limit funded agreements
  - correcting (PA), 2-32
- hash join processing
  - memory for, xxiii
- hash\_area\_size parameter
  - setting for an upgrade, xxiii
- help files
  - customized, xxix
  - installing (db), 4-4
- Hungary
  - enabling flexfield (JE), 6-33

## I

---

- igigbvuw.sql, 6-42
- igipreu.sql, 2-53
- implementation tasks
  - performing, 5-2, 6-2
  - product-specific, 7-6
- inactive products
  - treatment of, xxv
- indexes
  - determining tablespace for, xix
  - disabling custom (db), 3-37
  - dropping (AP), 7-5
  - re-enabling custom (db), 4-9
  - verifying custom privileges (db), 2-7
- init.ora
  - hash\_area\_size, xxiii
  - moving to new ORACLE\_HOME (db), 3-30
  - number of parallel query server processes, xxiii
  - parallel\_max\_servers, xxiii
  - setting parameters in, 1-4, 3-30, 3-31
- installed products
  - treatment of, xxvi
  - updating, 4-4
- intercompany balancing
  - setting up (GL), 6-14
- interMedia schema
  - default tablespace for (db), 3-34
  - temporary tablespace for (db), 3-34
- interMedia shared library
  - path name (db), 3-34
- interoperability patches
  - applying, xxii, 1-4
- inventory organizations
  - associating tax information (JL), 5-27
  - validating data (ONT), 2-48
- inventory valuation reports
  - running (INV), 3-21
  - verifying (INV), 5-47
- invflseg.sql, 6-39
- inviogds.sql, 6-41
- Invoice Import
  - purging invoices (AP), 3-7
- Invoice Import Interface
  - purging expense reports (AP), 3-7

invoices  
    cancelling/re-entering (JL), 5-28  
    setting up rounding account (PA), 5-34  
Invoker Rights  
    declaring (db), 4-9  
    effect on performance, xxvi  
invtxnpg.sql, 2-42  
IS manager  
    responsibilities of, xiv

## J

---

jacarmpr.sql, 2-27  
jacaupgr.sql, 2-27  
jamlsck.sql, 2-21  
jasgupg1.sql, 6-22, 6-23  
jasgupg2.sql, 6-23  
jathpupg.sql, 6-25  
jatwupg1.sql, 2-22  
jatwupg2.sql, 2-22  
jatwupg3.sql, 2-24  
jatwupg4.sql, 2-24  
jatwupg5.sql, 2-25  
jatwupg6.sql, 2-26  
Java Development Kit  
    requirements, xviii  
JAVA\_TOP, 2-3  
jehurvat.sql, 6-32  
jeitapid.sql, 6-32  
JESEPBAI.sql, 2-28  
JESEPBSI.sql, 2-28  
JESEPBUT.sql, 2-28  
JESEPPOI.sql, 2-28  
JESEPPOU.sql, 2-28  
jgzzfaap.sql, 6-27, 6-28  
jgzzper1.sql, 3-12  
jgzzper2.sql, 3-13  
jgzzupgd.sql, 4-24  
JL\_BR\_LOOKUPS  
    duplicate rows in (JL), 2-30  
jlbrsusl.sql, 2-29  
jlzztu01.sql, 5-26  
jlzztu02.sql, 5-26  
journal line  
    updating 3rd-party information (JL), 6-34

journal posting  
    setting function security for (GL), 6-14

## L

---

language configuration  
    retaining, xxvii  
languages  
    licensing additional, 7-9  
License Manager  
    using, 7-9  
    using for language configuration, xxvii  
licensed products  
    treatment of, xxvi  
    updating, 4-4  
licensing  
    additional products, 7-9  
linking records  
    GL and Payables (AP), 6-18  
    GL and Receivables (AR), 6-19  
local extent management  
    converting to (db), 2-5  
login  
    verifying operating system (db), 1-3  
long-running processes  
    examples of, xxii  
    list of, xxii  
lookup codes  
    creating new (JL), 5-21  
    modifying truncated (JA), 4-23  
    recording (JA), 2-21

## M

---

maintenance tasks  
    understanding, 7-12  
Makefile, 6-7  
mass additions  
    posting (PA), 1-15  
mass funds check/reservation  
    reviewing parameters (GL), 6-13  
material subelement  
    defining default for (CST), 5-44  
memory  
    requirements in an upgrade, xix

- menus
  - updating custom (JE), 5-20
  - updating custom (JG), 5-18
- Message Dictionary
  - converting functions in (AOL), 7-11
  - custom messages (AOL), 6-5
- messages
  - converting character-mode (AOL), 6-5
- MetaLink
  - see OracleMetaLink
- migration driver
  - running (GMS), 4-25
- MLS dates
  - correcting (PA), 2-31
- MRC
  - converting database to, 7-11
  - exchange rates in (AP), 3-6
  - transferring data to GL (AP), 3-8
  - verifying installation of (mrc), 4-11
- MRP
  - modifying profile options (PO), 3-22
  - setting profile options (PO), 5-55
- MRPSLNUP.sql, 5-45
- multilingual support
  - enhancements, xxviii
  - maintaining tables (db), 1-3
- Multi-Org
  - activating transaction managers (PO), 5-53
  - converting database to, 7-11
  - required profile option, xxvi
- multiple databases
  - performing upgrades on, xxvi
- Multiple Radix Support
  - in forms, xxviii
- multiple supplier banks
  - upgrading supplier data for (AP), 2-17
  - upgrading supplier site bank data for (AP), 2-17
- Multiple Worksite reporting
  - completing (PAY), 1-20

## N

---

- Natural Account tax codes
  - defining (GL), 6-19
- NCA

- upgrading from, xiii, xiv
- negative amount events
  - correcting (PA), 3-14
- Net8
  - setting up (db), 3-31
- new file system
  - created by Rapid Install, xxi
- new products
  - implementing, 7-6
- NLS
  - completing upgrade steps for (db), 3-38
  - installing translated software, 4-4
- non-adjusting negative amount items
  - correcting (PA), 2-33
- non-Global Demo databases
  - invalid data in (AK), 3-3
- Notification Approver profile option
  - setting up (ONT), 5-51

## O

---

- OA\_JDK\_TOP, 2-3
- OAD\_TOP, 2-3
- OAH\_TOP, 2-3
- objects
  - dropping (db), 7-2
  - dropping obsolete (FV), 3-25
  - integrating custom (db), 4-9
  - renaming custom (db), 1-3
- Offset taxes
  - setting up (AP), 6-15
- online education
  - about, A-3
- online help
  - installing, 4-4, 7-3
- ontexc07.sql, 2-46
- ontexc08.sql, 2-49
- ontup255.sql, 5-51
- ontupg48.sql, 5-48, 5-51
- ontupg49.sql, 5-49
- open interface
  - clearing tables (PO), 2-50
- Open Interface invoices
  - importing and purging (AP), 3-6
- Operating Unit

- setting profile option, xxvi
- optimization
  - definition of, xxiv
- Oracle Applications
  - logging on, 7-8
- Oracle Consulting Services
  - contacting, A-4
- Oracle database
  - migrating/upgrading, 3-29
- Oracle Forms 4.5
  - upgrading (AOL), 1-7
- Oracle Forms Developer 6i, 1-7
- Oracle Learning Network
  - about, A-3
- Oracle optimizer
  - method used, xxv
- ORACLE schema
  - identifying potential conflicts (FND), 3-27
  - resetting passwords (db), 4-7
- Oracle Support Services
  - contacting, A-3
- Oracle University
  - courses, A-3
- Oracle users
  - dropping obsolete (HR), 6-36
- ORACLE\_HOME
  - created by Rapid Install, xvii
- OracleMetaLink
  - using, A-4
- oraclestore.oracle.com
  - using, A-2
- order creation/manipulation
  - setting up responsibilities (ONT), 5-48
- Order Entry cycles
  - omitted from upgrade (ONT), 2-49
- Order Entry Interface programs
  - running (ONT), 2-43
- Order Import program
  - running (ONT), 2-43
- orders
  - closing eligible (ONT), 2-44
  - reviewing status (ONT), 2-44
- organization code
  - for purging transactions (INV), 2-42
- organizational payment method

- associating with a set of books (HR/PAY)), 5-43
- organizations
  - associating names with pre-existing definitions (ALR), 6-7
  - correcting default accounts (INV), 5-46
  - reviewing (PA), 5-29
  - reviewing default accounts (INV), 5-46
- OTLR
  - report for (HR), 5-41
- Overtime Calculation program
  - converting to PL/SQL (PA), 5-33

## P

---

- pa11u506.sql, 5-34
- pa620118.sql, 2-32
- pa630505.sql, 5-40
- pa634580.lst, 3-14
- pa634580.sql, 3-14
- pa652811.sql, 2-34
- pa661335.lst, 2-33
- pa661335.sql, 2-33
- pa858651.sql, 2-38
- pa882573.sql, 2-40
- pacrttab.sql, 2-36
- pacstrev.sql, 2-39
- painv.sql, 2-37
- parallel query server processes
  - determining, xxiii
- parallel\_max\_servers parameter
  - setting for an upgrade, xxiii
- pardlrpt.sql, 2-35
- pardlupd.sql, 2-36
- partially implemented installed products, xxv
- partially recoverable taxes
  - setting up (AP), 6-17, 6-18
- passwords
  - changing for database, 7-7
  - resetting in ORACLE schema (db), 4-7
- patch 1257205, 2-14
- patch 1268797, 1-4
- patch 1457345, 3-39
- patch 1561962, 6-24
- patch 1570300, 2-9
- patch 1658488, 2-28

- patch 1746184, 2-14
- patch 2662802, 7-3
- patch 451137, 1-8
- patch 634580, 3-14
- patch 668409, 1-8
- patch 747306, 2-18
- patch 786842, 5-27
- patch 839884, 5-27
- patxnerr.sql, 2-31
- patxnsq.sql, 2-31
- paupgor2.sql, 5-30
- Payables data
  - transferring to GL (AP), 3-8
- payment batches
  - completing outstanding (AP), 1-9
- payment formats
  - remodifying (AP), 5-7
- peoldsec.sql, 6-37
- period rates
  - reviewing (GL), 6-11
- peupl01v.sql, 6-36
- physical inventories in process
  - completing (INV), 3-20
- pick slips
  - closing (ONT), 2-46
- picking batches
  - closing (ONT), 2-46
- Planning Manager
  - starting (MRP), 5-45
- plxmlparser\_v1\_0\_2.zip, 3-37
- pocntpoh.sql, 2-51
- pocntrcv.sql, 2-51
- pocntreq.sql, 2-50
- podold.sql, 7-2
- position
  - updating custom (HR), 1-18
- post-upgrade steps
  - definition of, xiv
- preparatory scripts
  - running (db), 3-31, 3-34
- prepayment payment terms
  - setting up (AP), 5-8
- pre-upgrade steps
  - definition of, xiv
- Pricing upgrade errors
  - viewing (ONT), 5-52
- processing constraints
  - setting up (ONT), 5-50
- product files
  - backing up, 4-10
  - deleting, 7-3
- product table tablespace
  - determining size for, xix
- product tablespace
  - creating new, xx, 2-6
  - resizing existing, xx, 2-6
- products
  - licensing additional, 7-9
- product-specific tasks
  - performing, xvii, 5-2, 6-2
- profile options
  - setting (FND), 4-14
- Project Management Method, A-5
- project status
  - updating values for (PA), 5-31
- Public Sector Applications products
  - upgrading, xxx
- purge cutoff date
  - for purging transactions (INV), 2-42
- pyrtmig.sql, 5-42
- pyvaladr.sql, 6-38

## R

---

- radix
  - format for numbers, xxviii
- Rapid Install
  - configuring server processes (db), 4-5
  - creating file system with, xxi
  - laying down file systems, 2-2
  - setting up technology stack, 2-2
  - starting server processes (db), 4-5
  - upgrading with, xvi
  - using for server processes, xvii
  - when to use, xvii
- rvcрмаup.sql, 5-59
- realized gains, losses, and rounding accounts (AR), 1-11
- Receivables
  - interface with Projects (PA), xxxii

- recommended step
  - definition of, xv
- Reconciliation Open Interface
  - backing up customized objects (CE), 1-9
  - reinstalling customized objects (CE), 6-8
- recoverable tax
  - enabling (AP), 2-19
- recovery rules
  - print listings (JA), 2-27
- registry settings
  - preserving on Windows, 2-2
  - preserving on Windows platforms, xxvii
- Release Content Documents (RCD), xxiv
- renamed files
  - protecting data in, xxix
- reports
  - customized, xxix
  - updating custom (HR), 1-17
- request groups
  - assigning to responsibilities (JA), 6-28
- required step
  - definition of, xv
- responsibilities
  - updating/verifying custom (FND), 4-16
- revenue distributions
  - correcting bill amount data (PA), 2-35
- reversing functions
  - setting security for (GL), 6-14
- reversing items
  - correcting (PA), 2-37, 2-38
- roles
  - in an upgrade, xiv
- rollback segments
  - determining size of, xix
  - setting for normal use (db), 4-8
  - verify sizing (db), 3-36
- rows per commit
  - for purging transactions (INV), 2-42
- RPT
  - removed support for, xxix
- rule-based optimization
  - in this release, xxv
- rules
  - associating (FlexBuilder), 4-23

## S

---

- salary proposal view
  - customized script for (HR), 1-17
  - reapply customization to script (HR), 6-36
- sales orders history cutoff date
  - setting up, 5-45
- sales orders/invoices
  - updating (JL), 5-22
- schemas
  - integrating custom (db), 4-9
  - maintaining (mrc), 4-10
- scripts
  - restricting access to (FND), 4-20
- security schemas
  - removing old (IGI), 7-6
- seed data
  - dropping obsolete (IGI), 2-52
- seeded item types
  - updating (Workflow), 3-4
- Segment Value Inheritance
  - preserving GL account codes (GL), 6-9
- Self-Service Time
  - implementing (PA), 6-35
- server processes
  - configuring (db), 4-5
  - starting (db), 4-5
  - starting and configuring, xvii
- setup tasks
  - performing, 5-2, 6-2
- shared products
  - warnings about, xxvi
- Shipping Interface programs
  - running (ONT), 2-46
- SmartClient
  - upgrading from, xiii, xiv
- snapshot information
  - maintaining, 7-7
- SQL\*Forms 2.3
  - rewriting, 1-7
- SQL\*Plus options
  - checking (db), 3-35
- SQL\*Report
  - no support for, xxix
- srw directory

- changing name of (AOL), 6-5
- step summary lines
  - how to use, xv
- subledger security
  - upgrading (igi), 6-42
- summarization model
  - upgrading to (PA), 1-16
- SYS account password
  - defaults for, 7-7
- SYSADMIN
  - enabling (FND), 3-28
- SYSTEM account password
  - defaults for, 7-7
- system administration steps
  - understanding, 7-12
- system administrator
  - responsibilities of, xiv
- system requirements
  - for upgrading, xvii
- SYSTEM tablespace
  - minimum for upgrade, xix

## T

---

- tablespaces
  - requirements in an upgrade, xix
  - setting up (db), 2-5
- tax code
  - enabling (JA), 6-24
- tax groups
  - associating with tax categories (JL), 5-27
- tax information
  - populating (AX), 5-6
  - updating custom (PAY-US), 1-19
- tax rebate
  - print listings (JA), 2-27
- Tax Reconciliation report (AR), 3-11
- tax registration numbers
  - moving (JA), 2-23, 2-25
- tax structure
  - renaming custom (AR), 1-10
- tax system options
  - setting (JL), 5-22
- tax transactions
  - reconciling (AR), 3-11

- tax types
  - updating (JA), 6-22
- tax vendor
  - updating flexfield information (AR), 5-15
- tax vendor extension
  - creating custom views (AR), 5-12
  - saving (AR), 1-11
- taxable amounts
  - updating (JE), 6-31
- Taxware
  - additional upgrade issues (AR), 1-11, 5-15
- technical appraisals
  - re-archiving (JL), 5-28
  - restoring (JL), 1-13
- technical specialist
  - responsibilities of, xiv
- technology stack
  - requirements, xviii
  - setting up, 2-2
- TEMP tablespace
  - minimum for upgrade, xix
- temporary and interface tables
  - processing data in (INV), 3-20
- temporary tablespace
  - setting for an upgrade, xxiii
- test upgrade
  - performing, xx
- The Upgrade Manual Script
  - definition of, xxi
  - running, 1-2
- tiebacks
  - completing (PA), 1-14
- Time and Labor
  - corrective actions for (HR), 5-41
- timecards
  - in PTE (PA), 3-13
- timing statistics
  - baseline, xx
  - spreadsheet, xx
- training
  - about, A-3
- transaction control extension
  - adding parameters (PA), 5-36
- transaction flexfield columns
  - indexes on (AR), 5-10

- transaction history
  - purging (INV), 2-41
- Transaction Interface table
  - clearing (PA), 1-15
  - updating (PA), 5-39
- transaction managers
  - activating for Multi-Org (PO), 5-53
- transaction types
  - reviewing upgraded (ONT), 5-50
- transactions
  - printing completed (JL), 1-13
  - select for upgrade (ONT), 2-49
  - summarizing and transferring (PSP), 1-22
  - translated (AX), 2-14
- transfers
  - completing (PA), 1-14
- triggers
  - disabling custom (db), 3-37
  - dropping event alert (ALR), 3-2
  - re-creating event alert (ALR), 6-8
  - re-enabling custom (db), 4-9
- TUMS
  - running, 1-2
- txn\_fix.lst, 2-32

## U

---

- umask command
  - using (FND), 4-19
- uncosted transactions
  - standard costing
    - inventory only (CST), 3-18
- uniform invoice information
  - moving (JA), 2-22
- uniform numbers
  - moving (JA), 2-23, 2-25
  - recording (JA), 2-26
- UNIX Edition group
  - creating (FND), 4-18
- update awards summary
  - running (GMS), 3-25
- upgrade
  - baseline timing statistics, xx
  - important considerations for, xxiv
  - list of tasks, xvi

- performing test, xx
- scheduling, xx
- tablespace requirements, xix
- using Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet, xx

- Upgrade Assistance Program
  - definition of, xxi
- Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet
  - using, xx
- upgrade error report
  - generating (ONT), 5-52
- upgrade.out, 5-56
- user responsibility assignments
  - reviewing (FND), 6-3

## V

---

- VAT
  - compliance (GL), 6-19
  - migrating gross-based data (IGI), 6-42
  - updating Hungarian transactions (JE), 6-32
- VAT Reconciliation report (AR), 3-11
- Vertex
  - additional upgrade issues (AR), 1-11, 5-15
  - updating geocodes (HR), 1-19

## W

---

- warehouse name information
  - adding to transactions (JL), 5-26
- wfprotrst.sql, 3-4
- wfrmitt.sql, 3-5
- Windows platforms
  - preserving registry settings, xxvii
  - relinking, xviii
  - required software for, xviii
  - upgrading issues, xxvii
- WIP Value reports
  - running (CST), 3-18
  - verifying balances (CST), 5-43
- Workflow
  - completing installation of (FlexBuilder), 4-21
  - upgrading to 2.0.3, 1-8
- Workflow Builder
  - completing installation of (FlexBuilder), 4-21
- Workflow item attributes

- updating (ONT), 5-51
- Workflow Mailer
  - configuring, 7-9
- Workflow notification approver
  - setting up (ONT), 5-51
- Workflow Notification Mailer
  - configuring (FND), 4-13
- wshpre00.sql, 2-48

## **X**

---

- XML Parser
  - installing, 3-37
- XML SQL Utility
  - installing (db), 3-37
- XSU12\_ver1\_2\_1.zip, 3-38